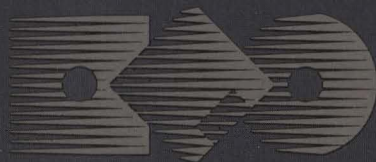


**TURBO C<sup>®</sup>**

**VERSION 1.5**

**ADDITIONS & ENHANCEMENTS**



BORLAND

**TURBO C®**

---

Addendum

**Version 1.5  
Additions and  
Enhancements**

Borland International  
4585 Scotts Valley Drive  
Scotts Valley, CA 95066

This manual was produced in its entirety with  
Sprint:® The Professional Word Processor,  
available from Borland.

Borland International, Inc.  
4585 Scotts Valley Drive  
Scotts Valley, California 95066

Copyright ©1987  
All Rights Reserved. First Printing, 1987  
Printed in U.S.A.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4

# Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	1
What You Will Find in this Addendum	1
<b>Chapter 1 Turbo C's Video Functions</b>	5
Some Words About Video Modes	5
Some Words About Windows and Viewports	6
What is a Window?	6
What is a Viewport?	6
Coordinates	7
Programming in Text Modes	7
The Console I/O Functions	7
Text Output and Manipulation	8
Window and Mode Control	9
Attribute Control	9
State Query	10
Text Windows	11
The <i>text_modes</i> Type	12
Text Colors	13
High-Performance Output: the <i>directvideo</i> Variable	14
Programming in Graphics Mode	15
The Graphics Library Functions	16
Graphics System Control	16
A More Detailed Discussion	17
Drawing and Filling	19
Manipulating the Screen and Viewport	20
Text Output in Graphics Mode	22
Color Control	24
Pixels and Palettes	24
Background and Drawing Color	25
Color Control on a CGA	25
Color Control on the EGA and VGA	27
Error Handling in Graphics Mode	28
State Query	29
<b>Chapter 2 Additions to TC.EXE</b>	31
The (New) Options/Directories Menu	31
The (Modified) Options/Environment Menu	32
New Hot Key	34

How Long Will Turbo C Save the Screen? .....	35
Changes to the Turbo C Editor .....	35
Setting Tab Sizes .....	36
Autoindent and Optimal Fill .....	36
Pair Matching .....	38
A Few Details About Pair Matching .....	38
Two Commands for Directional Matching .....	39
The Search for Comment Delimiters .....	40
Editor Hot Key Assignment .....	42
<b>Chapter 3 Changes to Command-Line Turbo C</b> .....	45
Extended Syntax for These Options .....	46
Implicit <i>vs.</i> User-specified Library Files .....	47
The Enhanced Library File-Search Algorithms .....	47
Using <code>-L</code> and <code>-I</code> in Configuration Files .....	48
An Example With Notes .....	48
<b>Chapter 4 New and Modified Functions and Variables</b> .....	51
New and Modified Global Variables .....	52
<code>_argc, _argv</code> .....	52
<code>directvideo</code> .....	52
<code>_heaplen, _stklen</code> .....	53
<code>_8087</code> .....	54
New and Modified Functions .....	55
<code>arc</code> .....	55
<code>assert</code> .....	58
<code>bar</code> .....	59
<code>bar3d</code> .....	60
<code>bsearch</code> .....	61
<code>calloc</code> .....	62
<code>chsize</code> .....	62
<code>circle</code> .....	63
<code>cleardevice</code> .....	63
<code>clearviewport</code> .....	63
<code>closegraph</code> .....	64
<code>clreol</code> .....	64
<code>clrscr</code> .....	65
<code>country</code> .....	65
<code>cprintf</code> .....	66
<code>cputs</code> .....	66
<code>delay</code> .....	66
<code>delline</code> .....	67
<code>detectgraph</code> .....	67
<code>div</code> .....	68
<code>drawpoly</code> .....	69

ellipse	70
exec...	70
fgetpos	71
fillpoly	71
floodfill	72
fsetpos	73
getarccoords	73
getaspectratio	73
getbkcolor	73
getche	75
getcolor	75
getfillpattern	76
getfillsettings	77
getgraphmode	79
getimage	80
getlinesettings	82
getmaxcolor	84
getmaxx	84
getmaxy	85
getmoderange	85
getpalette	86
getpixel	88
gettext	89
gettextinfo	90
gettextsettings	91
getviewsettings	95
getx	96
gety	97
gotoxy	97
graphdefaults	97
grapherrormsg	98
_graphfreemem	98
_graphgetmem	99
graphresult	100
highvideo	102
imagesize	102
initgraph	103
inline	107
ldiv	107
lfind	108
line	108
linerel	109
lineto	109
lowvideo	109

<code>_lrotl</code>	109
<code>_lrotr</code>	110
<code>lsearch</code>	110
<code>malloc</code>	110
<code>moverel</code>	111
<code>movetext</code>	111
<code>moveto</code>	112
<code>normvideo</code>	112
<code>nosound</code>	112
<code>outtext</code>	113
<code>outtextxy</code>	113
<code>pieslice</code>	114
<code>putch</code>	114
<code>putimage</code>	114
<code>putpixel</code>	115
<code>puttext</code>	115
<code>random</code>	115
<code>randomize</code>	116
<code>read</code>	116
<code>realloc</code>	117
<code>rectangle</code>	117
<code>registerbgidriver</code>	118
<code>registerbgifont</code>	119
<code>restorecrtmode</code>	119
<code>_rotr</code>	119
<code>_rotr</code>	120
<code>setactivepage</code>	120
<code>setallpalette</code>	121
<code>setbkcolor</code>	122
<code>setcolor</code>	122
<code>setfillpattern</code>	122
<code>setfillstyle</code>	122
<code>setgraphbufsize</code>	123
<code>setgraphmode</code>	124
<code>setlinestyle</code>	124
<code>setpalette</code>	124
<code>settextjustify</code>	124
<code>settextstyle</code>	125
<code>setusercharsize</code>	125
<code>setviewport</code>	126
<code>setvisualpage</code>	126
<code>sound</code>	126
<code>spawn...</code>	127
<code>strerror</code>	128

<code>_strerror</code> .....	129
<code>strtoul</code> .....	129
<code>tmpnam</code> .....	129
<code>tmpfile</code> .....	130
<code>textattr</code> .....	130
<code>textbackground</code> .....	132
<code>textcolor</code> .....	134
<code>textheight</code> .....	134
<code>textmode</code> .....	135
<code>textwidth</code> .....	136
<code>wherex</code> .....	136
<code>wherey</code> .....	137
<code>window</code> .....	137
<code>write</code> .....	138
<b>Chapter 5 Revised Function Prototypes</b> .....	139
<b>Chapter 6 Miscellaneous Information</b> .....	145
The TCCONFIG.EXE Conversion Utility for Configuration Files .....	145
How MAKE Searches for BUILTINS.MAK .....	146
What Are Streams? .....	146
Text vs. Binary Streams .....	147
Buffering Streams .....	147
Predefined Streams .....	148
What is a Configuration File? .....	149
The TURBO.CFG Configuration File .....	149
The TC Configuration Files .....	149
What is Stored in TC Configuration Files? .....	150
Creating a TC Configuration File .....	151
Changing Configuration Files Mid-stream .....	151
Where Does TC.EXE Look for TCCONFIG.TC? .....	151
TCINST vs. the Configuration File: Who's the Boss? .....	151
What Does "Config auto save" Do? .....	152
What are Pick Lists and Pick Files? .....	152
The Pick List .....	152
The Pick File .....	153
When and How Do You Get a Pick File? .....	153
When Does Turbo C Save Pick Files? .....	154
Corrections to the Original Manuals .....	154
<b>Appendix A The New TCINST</b> .....	157
What Is TCINST? .....	157
Running TCINST .....	158
The Turbo C Directories Option .....	159
The Editor Commands Option .....	160





Welcome to Turbo C version 1.5! This enhancement package includes a number of new Turbo C features. The major ones are

- more than 100 new functions, including powerful text and graphics video functions
- an object code librarian, so you can create and manage .LIB files
- new “creature comforts,” such as 43- and 50-line support in the Integrated Environment and multiple library directories

In this addendum to the Turbo C manuals, we document the version 1.5 additions and enhancements. This addendum supplements your *Turbo C User's Guide* and *Turbo C Reference Guide*; refer to this addendum for information about new program features and any significant changes to the original manuals.

## What You Will Find in this Addendum

---

This addendum has six chapters and four appendixes, covering the major differences between versions 1.0 and 1.5. Here's a summary of those differences, and the addendum chapters in which you will find information about them.

### *Turbo C's Video Functions* (Chapter 1)

Turbo C's extended console I/O package (`cprintf`, `cputs`, etc.) provides powerful text-mode screen- and window-management capabilities, along with text-attribute control. The new BGI (Borland Graphics Interface) graphics library supplies versatile drawing/painting and graphics text-output functions. These graphics functions support CGA, EGA, Hercules, VGA, and other graphics adapters. If you are not familiar with video functions, windows, or graphics in general, read Chapter 1 in the addendum for a basic overview of these features and functions. Refer to Chapter 4 in the addendum for individual function descriptions.

### *New and revised menus, and new hot key* (Chapter 2)

The original Options/Environment menu in Turbo C's integrated environment has been split into two menus (Environments and Directories) with some added options, and a new hot key provides additional functionality. The most notable feature on the new Options/Environments menu is the Screen size menu item—which lets you change the integrated environment display from 25-line mode to 43-line mode on your EGA-equipped system (or 50-line mode on your VGA-equipped system)—while the major feature on the new Options/Directories menu is the modified Library directories menu item.

The new capabilities on these menus include

- 25-, 43-, or 50-line display modes
- multiple library directories
- user-named pick files
- user-set tab sizes in the editor
- auto save of configuration file

The new hot key is *Alt-F5* (flip to/from saved output screen).

### *Multiple library directories* (Chapters 2 and 3)

You can now give TCC multiple *-L<dirname>* options, just as you always could with the *-I* option. You can also list multiple library directories in the integrated environment, under the (new) Options/Directories menu.

### *Expanded command-line syntax* (Chapter 3)

The syntax for the *-I* and *-L* command-line options has been expanded. These options now accept multiple directories, just as the integrated environment's equivalent menu items do.

### *New and modified functions and variables* (Chapter 4)

Version 1.5 has over 100 new functions, including several powerful additions to the console (text) I/O functions, a whole library of video graphics functions, a handful of miscellaneous new functions for ANSI-compatibility, a few modifications to existing functions, plus some new (and some modified) global variables. These are all presented with complete descriptions that supplement chapters 1 and 2 of the *Turbo C Reference Guide*.

### *Revised function prototypes* (Chapter 5)

To provide enhanced compatibility with the Proposed Draft ANSI C Standard, some of Turbo C's function prototypes have been revised in version 1.5. These prototypes are listed in an alphabetical table in this chapter.

### *Miscellaneous Information* (Chapter 6)

This chapter documents miscellaneous changes and additions to the product and the manuals that don't fall under any of the preceding categories.

- The former CNVTCFG.EXE utility has been renamed TCCONFIG.EXE; you use it to convert back and forth between the configuration file for TCC (TURBOC.CFG) and those for TC (\*.TC files).
- The search rules for MAKE's default file BUILTINS.MAK have changed; the new search algorithm is covered in this chapter.
- Version 1.5 supports two more predefined streams: *stdaux* and *stdprn*. All five predefined streams are explained in a section in this chapter.
- If you are not familiar with pick files and pick lists, refer to this chapter for a discussion.
- If you want to know more about configuration files, check out this chapter for an overview.
- Minor corrections to the original *Turbo C User's Guide* and *Turbo C Reference Guide* are listed here by page number.

### *New and revised utilities* (Appendixes A, B, C, and D)

Version 1.5 includes one modified utility and three new ones, explained in these four appendixes.

- Appendix A covers TCINST.EXE, the optional custom installation program. One nice feature in the new TCINST is the ability to rebind editor command keystrokes (both secondary and primary) to your preferred key sequences.
- Appendix B describes TLIB.EXE, an object code librarian.
- Appendix C covers GREP.COM, a very fast version of the well-known Unix file-search utility.
- Appendix D explains how to use BGIOBJ.EXE, a graphics utility, when registering graphics drivers and character fonts in your programs.

66

# Turbo C's Video Functions

*In this chapter, we first briefly discuss video modes and windows. After those overviews, we describe programming in text mode, then in graphics mode.*

Turbo C's new video functions are based on corresponding routines in Turbo Pascal 4.0. If you are not already familiar with controlling your PC's screen modes or creating and managing windows and viewports, take a few minutes to read the following words on those topics.

## Some Words About Video Modes

---

Your PC has some kind of video adapter. This can be a Monochrome Display Adapter (MDA) for your basic text-only display, or it can be capable of displaying graphics, such as a Color Graphics Adapter (CGA), an Enhanced Graphics Adapter (EGA), or a Hercules Monochrome Graphics Adapter. Each adapter can operate in a variety of modes; the mode specifies whether the screen displays 80 or 40 columns (text mode only), the display resolution (graphics mode only), and the display type (color, monochrome, or black & white).

The screen's operating mode is defined when your program calls one of the mode-defining functions (**textmode**, **initgraph**, or **setgraphmode**).

- In *text mode*, your PC's screen is divided into cells (80 or 40 columns wide by 25 lines high). Each cell consists of an attribute and a character. The character is the displayed ASCII character, while the attribute specifies *how* the character is displayed (its color, intensity, etc.). Turbo C version

1.5 provides a full range of routines to manipulate the text screen: for writing text directly to the screen, and for controlling the cell attributes.

- In *graphics mode*, your PC's screen is divided into pixels; each pixel displays a single dot on the screen. The number of pixels (the resolution) depends on the type of video adapter connected to your system and the mode that adapter is in. You can use functions from Turbo C's new graphics library to create graphic displays on the screen: you can draw lines and shapes, fill enclosed areas with patterns, and control the color of each pixel.

In text modes, the upper-left hand corner of the screen is position (1,1), with *x*-coordinates increasing from left-to-right, and *y*-coordinates increasing from screen-top to screen-bottom. In graphics modes, the upper-left hand corner is position (0,0), with the *x*- and *y*-coordinate values increasing in the same manner.

## Some Words About Windows and Viewports

---

Version 1.5 of Turbo C provides functions for creating and managing windows on your screen in text mode (and viewports in graphics mode). If you are not familiar with windows and viewports, you should read this brief overview. Turbo C's new window- and viewport-management functions are explained in "Programming in Text Mode" and "Programming in Graphics Mode" later in this chapter.

### *What is a Window?*

---

A window is a rectangular area defined on your PC's video screen when it's in a text mode. When your program writes to the screen, its output is restricted to the active window. The rest of the screen (outside the window) remains untouched.

The default window is a full-screen text window. Your program can change this default full-screen text window to a text window smaller than the full screen (with a call to the **window** function). This function specifies the window's position in terms of screen coordinates.

### *What is a Viewport?*

---

In graphics mode, you can also define a rectangular area on your PC's video screen; this is a viewport. When your graphics program outputs

drawings, etc., the viewport acts as the virtual screen. The rest of the screen (outside the viewport) remains untouched. You define a viewport in terms of screen coordinates with a call to the **setviewport** function.

## *Coordinates*

---

Except for these window- and viewport-defining functions, all coordinates for text-mode and graphics-mode functions are given in window- or viewport-relative terms, not in absolute screen coordinates. The upper left corner of the text-mode window is the coordinate origin, referred to as (1,1); in graphics modes, the viewport coordinate origin is position (0,0).

## **Programming in Text Modes**

---

*In this section we give a brief summary of the functions you use in text mode: For more detailed information about these functions, refer to the function lookup section of this addendum.*

In version 1.5 of Turbo C, the direct console I/O package (**cprintf**, **cputs**, etc.) has been enhanced to provide higher-performance text output, and extended to provide window management, cursor positioning, and attribute control functions. These functions are all part of the standard Turbo C libraries; they are prototyped in the header file CONIO.H.

## *The Console I/O Functions*

---

Turbo C's text-mode functions work in any of the five possible video text modes: Which modes are available on your system depends on the type of video adapter and monitor you have. You specify the current text mode with a call to **textmode**. How to use this function is described later in this chapter, and under the **textmode** entry in Chapter 4 of this addendum.

These text-mode functions are divided into four separate groups:

- text output and manipulation
- window and mode control
- attribute control
- state query

We cover these four text-mode function groups in the following sections.



## Text Output and Manipulation

Here's a quick summary of the text output and manipulation functions:

=====

### *Writing and reading text:*

<b>cprintf</b>	sends formatted output to the screen
<b>cputs</b>	sends a string to the screen
<b>putch</b>	sends a single character to the screen
<b>getche</b>	reads a character and echoes it to the screen

### *Manipulating text (and the cursor) on-screen:*

<b>clrscr</b>	clears the text window
<b>clreol</b>	clears from the cursor to the end of the line
<b>delline</b>	deletes the line where the cursor rests
<b>gotoxy</b>	positions the cursor
<b>insline</b>	inserts a blank line below the line where the cursor rests
<b>movetext</b>	copies text from one area on screen to another

### *Moving blocks of text into and out of memory:*

<b>gettext</b>	copies text from an area on screen to memory
<b>puttext</b>	copies text from memory to an area on screen

=====

Your screen-output programs will come up in a full-screen text window by default, so you can immediately write, read, and manipulate text without any preliminary mode-setting. You write text to the screen with the direct console output functions **cprintf**, **cputs**, and **putch**, and echo input with the function **getche**. Text wraps within the window just as expected; if a word would extend beyond the window's right border, it is moved down to the beginning of the next line.

Once your text is on the screen, you can erase the active window with **clrscr**, erase part of a line with **clreol**, delete a whole line with **delline**, and insert a blank line with **insline**. The latter three functions operate relative to the cursor position; you move the cursor to a specified location with **gotoxy**. You can also copy a whole block of text from one rectangular location in the window to another with **movetext**.

You can capture a rectangle of on-screen text to memory with **gettext**, and put that text back on the screen (anywhere you want) with **puttext**.

## Window and Mode Control

There are two window- and mode-control functions:

=====

<b>textmode</b>	sets the screen to a text mode
<b>window</b>	defines a text-mode window

=====

You can set your screen to any of several video text modes with **textmode** (limited only by your system's type of monitor and adapter). This initializes the screen as a full-screen text window, in the particular mode specified, and clears any residual images or text.

When your screen is in a text mode, you can output to the full screen, or you can set aside a *portion* of the screen—a window—to which your program's output is confined. To create a text window, you call **window**, specifying what area on the screen it will occupy.

## Attribute Control

Here's a quick summary of the text-mode attribute control functions:

=====

### *Setting foreground and background:*

<b>textcolor</b>	sets the foreground color (attribute)
<b>textbackground</b>	sets the background color (attribute)
<b>textattr</b>	sets the foreground and background colors (attributes) at the same time

### *Converting intensity:*

<b>highvideo</b>	sets text to high intensity
<b>lowvideo</b>	sets text to low intensity
<b>normvideo</b>	sets text to original intensity

=====

The attribute-control functions set the current attribute, which is represented by an 8-bit value: the four lowest bits represent the foreground color, the next three bits give the background color, and the high bit is the "blink enable" bit.

Subsequent text is displayed in the current attribute. With the attribute-control functions, you can set the background and foreground (character) colors separately (with **textbackground** and **textcolor**) or combine the color specifications in a single call to **textattr**. You can also specify that the character—the foreground—will blink. Most color monitors in color modes will display the true colors. Non-color monitors may convert some or all of the attributes to various monochromatic shades or other visual effects, such as bold, underscore, reverse video, etc.

You can direct your system to map the high-intensity foreground colors to low intensity colors with **lowvideo** (which turns *off* the high intensity bit for the characters). Or you can map the low-intensity colors to high intensity with **highvideo** (which turns *on* the character high-intensity bit). When you're through playing around with the character intensities, you can restore the settings to their original values with **normvideo**.

## State Query

Here's a quick summary of the state-query functions:

=====	
<b>gettextinfo</b>	fills in a <b>text_info</b> structure with information about the current text window
<b>wherex</b>	gives the <i>x</i> -coordinate of the cell containing the cursor
<b>wherey</b>	gives the <i>y</i> -coordinate of the cell containing the cursor
=====	

Turbo C's console I/O functions include some designed for "state query". With these functions, you can retrieve information about your text-mode window and the current cursor position within the window.

The **gettextinfo** function fills a **text\_info** structure (defined in CONIO.H) with several details about the text window, including:

- the current video mode
- the window's position in absolute screen coordinates
- the window's dimensions
- the current foreground and background colors
- the cursor's current position

Sometimes you might need only a few of these details. Rather than retrieving all the text window information, you can find out just the cursor's (window-relative) position with **wherex** and **wherey**.

## *Text Windows*

---

The default text window is full screen; you can change this to a less-than-full-screen text window with a call to the **window** function. Text windows can contain up to 25 lines (the maximum number of lines on-screen in any text mode) and up to 40 or 80 columns (depending on your text mode).

The coordinate origin of a Turbo C text window is the *upper left-hand corner* of the *window*. The coordinates of the window's upper left corner are (1,1); the coordinates of the bottom right corner of a full-screen 80-column text window are (80,25).

### *An Example*

Suppose your 100% PC-compatible system is in 80-column text mode, and you want to create a window. The upper left corner of the window will be at screen coordinates (10, 8), and the lower right corner of the window will be at screen coordinates (50, 21). To do this, you call the **window** function, like this:

```
window(10, 8, 50, 21);
```

Now that you've created the text-mode window, you want to move the cursor to the *window* position (5, 8) and write some text in it, so you decide to use **gotoxy** and **cputs**.

```
gotoxy(5, 8);  
cputs("Happy Birthday, Frank Borland");
```

Figure 1.1 illustrates these ideas.

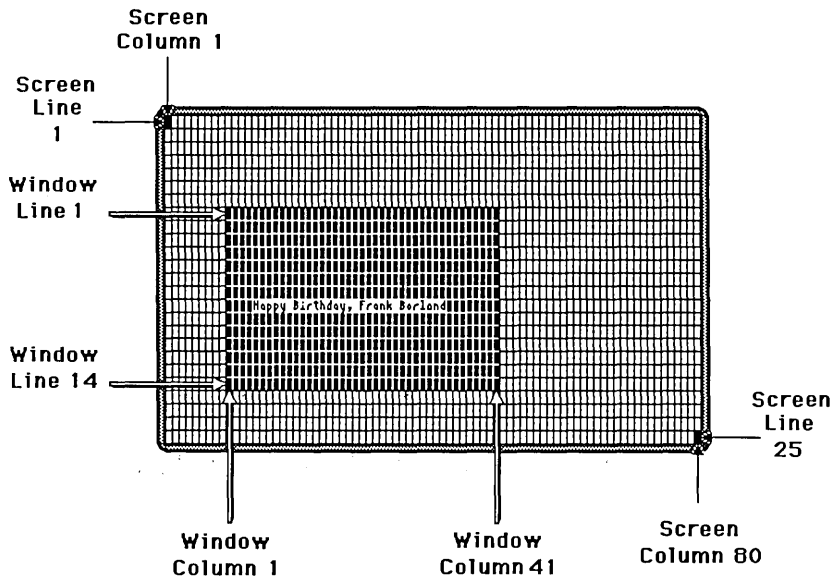


Figure 1.1: A Window in 80x25 Text Mode

## *The `text_modes` Type*

---

You can put your monitor into one of five PC text modes with a call to the `textmode` function. The enumeration type *text\_modes*, defined in `CONIO.H`, enables you to use symbolic names for the *mode* argument to the `textmode` function, instead of "raw" mode numbers. However, if you use the symbolic constants, you must `#include <conio.h>` in your source code.

The numeric and symbolic values defined by *text\_modes* are as follows:

<i>Symbolic Constant</i>	<i>Numeric Value</i>	<i>Video Text Mode</i>
LAST	-1	Previous text mode enabled
BW40	0	Black & White, 40 columns
C40	1	16-Color, 40 columns
BW80	2	Black & White, 80 columns
C80	3	16-Color, 80 columns
MONO	7	Monochrome, 80 columns

For example, the following calls to **textmode** will put your color monitor in the indicated operating mode:

<i>Call</i>	<i>Operating Mode</i>
<code>textmode(0)</code>	Black&White, 40 column
<code>textmode(BW80)</code>	Black&White, 80 column
<code>textmode(C40)</code>	16-Color, 40 column
<code>textmode(3)</code>	16-Color, 80 column

## *Text Colors*

*For a detailed description of how cell attributes are laid out, refer to the **textattr** entry in Chapter 4 of this addendum.*

When a character occupies a cell, the color of the character is the *foreground*; the color of the cell's remaining area is the *background*. Color monitors with color video adapters can display up to 16 different colors; monochrome monitors substitute different visual attributes (highlighted, underscored, reverse video, etc.) for the colors.

The include file CONIO.H defines symbolic names for the different colors. If you use the symbolic constants, you must `#include <conio.h>` in your source code.

The following table lists these symbolic constants and their corresponding numeric values. Note that only the first eight colors are available for the

background, while all sixteen colors are available for the foreground (the characters themselves).

---

Symbolic Constant	Numeric Value	Foreground or Background?
BLACK	0	both
BLUE	1	both
GREEN	2	both
CYAN	3	both
RED	4	both
MAGENTA	5	both
BROWN	6	both
LIGHTGRAY	7	both
DARKGRAY	8	foreground only
LIGHTBLUE	9	foreground only
LIGHTGREEN	10	foreground only
LIGHTCYAN	11	foreground only
LIGHTRED	12	foreground only
LIGHTMAGENTA	13	foreground only
YELLOW	14	foreground only
WHITE	15	foreground only
BLINK	128	foreground only

---

You can add the symbolic constant BLINK (numeric value 128) to a foreground argument if you want the character to blink.

## *High-Performance Output: the `directvideo` Variable*

---

Turbo C's console I/O package includes a variable called *directvideo*. This variable controls whether your program's console output goes directly to the video RAM (*directvideo* = 1) or goes via BIOS calls (*directvideo* = 0).

The default value is *directvideo* = 1 (console output goes directly to the video RAM). In general, going directly to video RAM gives very high performance (spelled f-a-s-t-e-r o-u-t-p-u-t), but doing so requires your computer to be 100% IBM PC compatible: your video hardware must be identical to IBM display adapters. Setting *directvideo* = 0 will work on any machine that is IBM BIOS-compatible, but the console output will be slower.

## Programming in Graphics Mode

---

*In this section we give a brief summary of the functions you use in graphics mode: For more detailed information about these functions, refer to Chapter 4 of this addendum.*

Turbo C version 1.5 provides a separate library of over 70 graphics functions, ranging from high-level calls (like **setviewport**, **bar3d**, and **drawpoly**) to bit-oriented functions (like **getimage** and **putimage**). The graphics library supports numerous fill and line styles, and provides several text fonts that you can magnify, justify, and orient horizontally or vertically.

These functions are in the new library GRAPHICS.LIB, and they are prototyped in the header file GRAPHICS.H. In addition to these two files, the graphics package includes graphics device drivers (\*.BGI files) and stroked character fonts (\*.CHR files); we discuss these additional files in following sections.

To use any of the graphics functions, you need to name GRAPHICS.LIB in your project file if you're using TC.EXE; if you're using TCC.EXE, you need to list GRAPHICS.LIB on the command line. For example, if your program, MYPROG.C, uses graphics, the TCC command line would be:

```
tcc myprog graphics.lib
```

For TC.EXE, your project file, MYPROG.PRJ, would contain the line

```
myprog graphics.lib
```

**Important Note:** There is only one graphics library, not separate versions for each memory model (in contrast to the standard libraries CS.LIB, CC.LIB, CM.LIB, etc., which are memory-model specific). Each function in GRAPHICS.LIB is a **far** function, and those graphics functions that take pointers take **far** pointers. For these functions to work properly, it is important that you `#include <graphics.h>` in every module that uses graphics.



## *The Graphics Library Functions*

---

Turbo C's graphics functions comprise seven categories:

- graphics system control
- drawing and filling
- manipulating screens and viewports
- text output
- color control
- error handling
- state query

### Graphics System Control

Here's a quick summary of the graphics system control functions:

=====	
<b>closegraph</b>	shuts down the graphics system
<b>detectgraph</b>	checks the hardware and determines which graphics driver and mode to use
<b>graphdefaults</b>	resets all graphics system variables to their default settings
<b>_graphfreemem</b>	deallocates graphics memory; hook for defining your own routine
<b>_graphgetmem</b>	allocates graphics memory; hook for defining your own routine
<b>getgraphmode</b>	returns the current graphics mode
<b>getmoderange</b>	returns lowest and highest valid modes for specified driver
<b>initgraph</b>	initializes the graphics system and puts the hardware into graphics mode
<b>registerbgidriver</b>	registers a linked-in or user-loaded driver file for inclusion at link time
<b>restorecrtmode</b>	restores the original (pre-initgraph) screen mode
<b>setgraphbufsize</b>	specifies size of the internal graphics buffer
<b>setgraphmode</b>	selects the specified graphics mode, clears the screen, and restores all defaults
=====	

Turbo C's graphics package provides graphics drivers for the following graphics adapters (and true compatibles):

- Color Graphics Adapter (CGA)
- Multi Color Graphics Array (MCGA)
- Enhanced Graphics Adapter (EGA)
- Video Graphics Array (VGA)
- Hercules Graphics Adapter
- AT&T 400-line Graphics Adapter
- 3270 PC Graphics Adapter

To start the graphics system, you first call the **initgraph** function. **initgraph** loads the graphics driver and puts the system into graphics mode. You can tell **initgraph** to use a particular graphics driver and mode, or to auto detect the attached video adapter at run time and pick the corresponding driver. If you tell **initgraph** to auto detect, it calls **detectgraph** to select a graphics driver and mode.

A graphics driver can support several different graphics modes. You find out how many modes a given driver supports with **getmoderange**, and what the current mode is with **getgraphmode**. You change graphics modes with **setgraphmode**, and can return the video mode to its original state (before graphics was initialized) with **restorecrtmode**.

**graphdefaults** resets the graphics state's settings (viewport size, draw color, fill color and pattern, etc.) to their default values.

Finally, when you're through using graphics, call **closegraph** to shut down the graphics system. **closegraph** unloads the driver from memory and restores the original video mode (via **restorecrtmode**).

## ***A More Detailed Discussion***

*The previous discussion provided an overview of how **initgraph** operates. In the following paragraphs, we describe the behavior of **initgraph**, **\_graphgetmem**, and **\_graphfreemem** in some detail.*

Normally, the **initgraph** routine loads a graphics driver by allocating memory for the driver, then loading the appropriate .BGI file from disk. As an alternative to this dynamic loading scheme, you can link a graphics driver file (or several of them) directly into your executable program file. You do this by first converting the .BGI file to an .OBJ file (using the BGIOBJ utility), then placing calls to **registerbgidriver** in your source code (before the call to **initgraph**) to *register* the graphics driver(s). When you build your program, you need to link the .OBJ files for the registered drivers.

After determining which graphics driver to use (perhaps *via* `detectgraph`), `initgraph` checks to see if the desired driver has been registered. If so, `initgraph` uses the registered driver directly from memory. Otherwise, `initgraph` allocates memory for the driver and loads the .BGI file from disk.

**Note:** Using `registerbgidriver` is an advanced programming technique, not recommended for novice programmers. This function is described in more detail in Appendix D in this addendum.

During run time, the graphics system might need to allocate memory for drivers, fonts, and internal buffers. If this is necessary, it calls `_graphgetmem` to allocate memory, and calls `_graphfreemem` to free it. By default, these routines simply call `malloc` and `free`, respectively.

You can override this default behavior by defining your own `_graphgetmem` and `_graphfreemem` functions. By doing this, you can control graphics memory allocation yourself. You must, however, use the same names for your own versions of these memory-allocation routines: they will override the default functions with the same names that are in the standard C libraries.

## Drawing and Filling

Here's a quick summary of the drawing and filling functions:

=====

### *Drawing:*

<b>arc</b>	draws a circular arc
<b>circle</b>	draws a circle
<b>drawpoly</b>	draws the outline of a polygon
<b>ellipse</b>	draws an elliptical arc
<b>getarcoords</b>	returns the coordinates of the last call to <b>arc</b> or <b>ellipse</b>
<b>getaspectratio</b>	returns the aspect ratio of the current graphics mode
<b>getlinesettings</b>	returns the current line style, line pattern, and line thickness
<b>line</b>	draws a line from (x0, y0) to (x1, y1)
<b>linerel</b>	draws a line to a point some relative distance from the current position (CP)
<b>lineto</b>	draws a line from the current position (CP) to (x,y)
<b>moveto</b>	moves the CP to (x,y)
<b>moverel</b>	moves the current position (CP) a relative distance
<b>rectangle</b>	draws a rectangle
<b>setlinestyle</b>	sets the current line width and style

### *Filling:*

<b>bar</b>	draws and fills a bar
<b>bar3d</b>	draws and fills a 3-D bar
<b>fillpoly</b>	draws and fills a polygon
<b>floodfill</b>	flood-fills a bounded region
<b>getfillpattern</b>	returns the user-defined fill pattern
<b>getfillsettings</b>	returns information about the current fill pattern and color
<b>pieslice</b>	draws and fills a pie slice
<b>setfillpattern</b>	selects a user-defined fill pattern
<b>setfillstyle</b>	sets the fill pattern and fill color

=====

With Turbo C's drawing and painting functions, you can draw colored lines, arcs, circles, ellipses, rectangles, pieslices, 2- and 3-dimensional bars, polygons, and regular or irregular shapes based on combinations of these. You can fill any bounded shape (or any region surrounding such a shape) with one of 11 predefined patterns, or your own user-defined pattern. You can also control the thickness and style of the drawing line, and the location of the CP.

You draw lines and unfilled shapes with the functions **arc**, **circle**, **drawpoly**, **ellipse**, **line**, **linerel**, **lineto**, and **rectangle**. You can fill these shapes with

**floodfill**, or combine drawing/filling into one step with **bar**, **bar3d**, **fillpoly**, and **pieslice**. You use **setlinestyle** to specify whether the drawing line (and border line for filled shapes) is thick or thin, and whether its style is solid, dotted, etc., or some other line pattern you've defined. You can select a predefined fill pattern with **setfillstyle**, and define your own fill pattern with **setfillpattern**. You move the current position (CP) to a specified location with **moveto**, and move it a specified *distance* with **moverel**.

To find out the current line style and thickness, you call **getlinesettings**. For information about the current fill pattern and fill color, you call **getfillsettings**; you can get the user-defined fill pattern with **getfillpattern**.

You can get the aspect ratio (the scaling factor used by the graphics system to make sure circles come out round) with **getaspectratio**, and get coordinates of the last drawn arc or ellipse by calling **getarccoords**.

## Manipulating the Screen and Viewport

Here's a quick summary of the image-manipulation functions:

=====

### *Screen Manipulation*

<b>cleardevice</b>	clears the screen
<b>setactivepage</b>	sets the active page for graphics output
<b>setvisualpage</b>	sets the visual graphics page number

### *Viewport Manipulation*

<b>clearviewport</b>	clears the current viewport
<b>getviewsettings</b>	returns information about the current viewport
<b>setviewport</b>	sets the current output viewport for graphics output

### *Image Manipulation*

<b>getimage</b>	saves a bit image of the specified region to memory
<b>imagesize</b>	returns the number of bytes required to store a rectangular region of the screen
<b>putimage</b>	puts a previously-saved bit image onto the screen

### *Pixel Manipulation*

<b>getpixel</b>	gets the pixel color at (x,y)
<b>putpixel</b>	plots a pixel at (x,y)

=====

Besides drawing and painting, the graphics library offers several functions for manipulating the screen, viewports, images, and pixels. You can clear the whole screen in one fell swoop with a call to `cleardevice`; this routine erases the entire screen and homes the current position (CP) in the viewport, but leaves all other graphics system settings intact (the line, fill, and text styles, the palette, the viewport settings, etc.).

Depending on your graphics adapter, your system has between one and eight screen page buffers, which are areas in memory where individual whole-screen images are stored dot-by-dot. You can specify which screen page is the active one (where graphics functions place their output) and which is the visual page (the one displayed on screen) with `setactivepage` and `setvisualpage`, respectively.

Once your screen's in a graphics mode, you can define a viewport (a rectangular "virtual screen") on your screen with a call to `setviewport`. You define the viewport's position in terms of absolute screen coordinates, and specify whether clipping is *on* (active) or *off*. You clear the viewport with `clearviewport`. To find out the current viewport's absolute screen coordinates and clipping status, call `getviewsettings`.

You can capture a portion of the on-screen image with `getimage`, call `imagesize` to calculate the number of bytes required to store that captured image in memory, then put the stored image back on the screen (anywhere you want) with `putimage`.

The coordinates for all output functions (drawing, filling, text, etc.) are viewport-relative.

You can also manipulate the color of individual pixels with the functions `getpixel` (which returns the color of a given pixel) and `putpixel` (which plots a specified pixel in a given color).

## Text Output in Graphics Mode

Here's a quick summary of the graphics-mode text output functions:

=====

<b>gettextsettings</b>	returns the current text font, direction, size, and justification
<b>outtext</b>	sends a string to the screen at the current position (CP)
<b>outtextxy</b>	sends a string to the screen at the specified position
<b>registerbfont</b>	registers a linked-in or user-loaded font for inclusion at link time
<b>settextjustify</b>	sets text justification values used by <b>outtext</b> and <b>outtextxy</b>
<b>settextstyle</b>	sets the current text font, style, and character magnification factor
<b>setusercharsize</b>	sets width and height ratios for stroked fonts
<b>textheight</b>	returns the height of a string in pixels
<b>textwidth</b>	returns the width of a string in pixels

=====

The graphics library includes an 8×8 bit-mapped font and several stroked fonts for text output while in graphics mode.

- In a *bit-mapped* font, each character is defined by a matrix of pixels.
- In a *stroked* font, each character is defined by a series of vectors that tell the graphics system how to draw that character.

The advantage of using a stroked font is apparent when you start to draw large characters. Since a stroked font is defined by vectors, it will still retain good resolution and quality when the font is enlarged. On the other hand, when you enlarge a bit-mapped font, the matrix is multiplied by a scaling factor; as the scaling factor becomes larger, the characters' resolution becomes coarser. For small characters, the bit-mapped font should be sufficient, but for larger text you should select a stroked font.

You output graphics text by calling either **outtext** or **outtextxy**, and control the justification of the output text (with respect to the CP) with **settextjustify**. You select the character font, direction (horizontal or vertical), and size (scale) with **settextstyle**. You can find out the current text settings by calling **gettextsettings**, which returns the current text font, justification, magnification, and direction in a **textsettings** structure. **setusercharsize** allows you to modify the character width and height of stroked fonts.

If clipping is *on*, all text strings output by **outtext** and **outtextxy** will be clipped at the viewport borders. If clipping is *off*, these functions will throw away bit-mapped font output if any part of the text string would go off the screen edge; stroked font output is truncated at the screen edges.

The default 8×8 bit-mapped font is built in to the graphics package, so it is always available at run time. The stroked fonts are each kept in a separate .CHR file; they can be loaded at run time or converted to .OBJ files (with the BGIOBJ utility) and linked into your .EXE file.

To determine the on-screen size of a given text string, call **textheight** (which measures the string's height in pixels) and **textwidth** (which measures its width in pixels).

Normally, the **settextstyle** routine loads a font file by allocating memory for the font, then loading the appropriate .CHR file from disk. As an alternative to this dynamic loading scheme, you can link a character font file (or several of them) directly into your executable program file. You do this by first converting the .CHR file to an .OBJ file (using the BGIOBJ utility), then placing calls to **registerbgifont** in your source code (before the call to **settextstyle**) to *register* the character font(s). When you build your program, you need to link in the .OBJ files for the stroked fonts you register.

**Note:** Using **registerbgifont** is an advanced programming technique, not recommended for novice programmers. This function is described in more detail in Appendix D in this addendum.



# Color Control

Here's a quick summary of the color control functions:

=====

## *Get color information*

<b>getbkcolor</b>	returns the current background color
<b>getcolor</b>	returns the current drawing color
<b>getmaxcolor</b>	returns the maximum color value available in the current graphics mode
<b>getpalette</b>	returns the current palette and its size

## *Set one or more colors*

<b>setallpalette</b>	changes all palette colors as specified
<b>setbkcolor</b>	sets the current background color
<b>setcolor</b>	sets the current drawing color
<b>setpalette</b>	changes one palette color as specified by its arguments

=====

*Before summarizing how these color control functions work on CGA and EGA systems, we first present a basic description of how colors are actually produced on your graphics screen.*

## *Pixels and Palettes*

The graphics screen consists of an array of pixels; each pixel produces a single (colored) dot on the screen. The pixel's value does not specify the precise color directly; it is an index into a color table called a *palette*. The palette entry corresponding to a given pixel value contains the exact color information for that pixel.

This indirection scheme has a number of implications. Though the hardware might be capable of displaying many colors, only a subset of those colors can be displayed at any given time. The number of colors that can be displayed at any one time is equal to the number of entries in the palette (the palette's *size*). For example, on an EGA, the hardware can display 64 different colors, but only 16 of them at a time; the EGA palette's *size* = 16.

The *size* of the palette determines the range of values a pixel can assume, from 0 to (*size* - 1). The **getmaxcolor** function returns the highest valid pixel value (*size* - 1) for the current graphics driver and mode.

In this addendum, we often use the term *color*, such as the current drawing color, fill color and pixel color. In fact, this color is like a pixel value: it's an index into the palette. Only the palette determines the true color on the screen. By manipulating the palette, you can change the actual color displayed on the screen even though the pixel values (drawing color, fill color, etc.) have not changed.

### *Background and Drawing Color*

The *background color* always corresponds to pixel value 0. When an area is cleared to the background color, that area's pixels are simply set to 0.

The *drawing color* is the value to which pixels are set when lines are drawn. You select a drawing color with `setcolor(n)`, where *n* is a valid pixel value for the current palette.

### *Color Control on a CGA*

Due to graphics hardware differences, how you actually control color differs quite a bit between the CGA and the EGA, so we'll present them separately. Color control on the AT&T driver and the lower resolutions of the MCGA driver is similar to CGA color control.

On the CGA, you can choose to display your graphics in low resolution (320x200), which allows you to use four colors, or high resolution (640x200), in which you can use two colors.

#### *CGA Low Resolution*

In the low resolution modes, you can choose from four predefined four-color palettes. In any of these palettes, you can only set the first palette entry; entries 1, 2, and 3 are fixed. The first palette entry (color 0) is the background color. This background color can be any one of the 16 available colors (see following table).

You choose which palette you want by the mode you select (CGAC0, CGAC1, CGAC2, CGAC3): these modes use color palette 0 through color palette 3, as detailed in the following table.

<i>Palette Number</i>	<i>Color assigned to pixel value</i>		
	<i>1</i>	<i>2</i>	<i>3</i>
0	lightgreen	lightred	yellow
1	lightcyan	lightmagenta	white
2	green	red	brown
3	cyan	magenta	lightgray

The available CGA background colors, defined in GRAPHICS.H, are listed in the following table.

<i>Numeric Value</i>	<i>Symbolic Name</i>
0	BLACK
1	BLUE
2	GREEN
3	CYAN
4	RED
5	MAGENTA
6	BROWN
7	LIGHTGRAY
8	DARKGRAY
9	LIGHTBLUE
10	LIGHTGREEN
11	LIGHTCYAN
12	LIGHTRED
13	LIGHTMAGENTA
14	YELLOW
15	WHITE

To assign one of these colors to the CGA background color, use `setbkcolor(color)`, where *color* is one of the entries in the preceding table. Note that for CGA, this color is not a pixel value (palette index); it directly specifies the *actual* color to be put in the first palette entry.

### *CGA High Resolution*

In high resolution mode (640x200), the CGA displays two colors: a black background and a colored foreground. Pixels can take on values of either 0 or 1. Because of a quirk in the CGA itself, the foreground color is actually what the hardware thinks of as its background color: you set it with the `setbkcolor` routine. (Strange but true.)

The colors available for the colored foreground are those listed in the preceding table. The CGA uses this color to display all pixels whose value equals 1.

The modes that behave in this way are CGAHI, MCGAMED, MCGAHI, ATT400MED, and ATT400HI.

### *CGA Palette Routines*

Because the CGA palette is predetermined, you should not use the `setallpalette` routine on a CGA. Also, you should not use `setpalette(index, actual_color)`, except for `index = 0`. (This is an alternate way to set the CGA background color to *actual\_color*.)

### *Color Control on the EGA and VGA*

On the EGA, the palette contains 16 entries from a total of 64 possible colors, and each entry is user-settable.

You can retrieve the current palette with `getpalette`, which fills in a structure with the palette's size (16) and an array of the actual palette entries (the "hardware color numbers" stored in the palette). You can change the palette entries individually with `setpalette`, or all at once with `setallpalette`.

The default EGA palette corresponds to the 16 CGA colors, as given in the previous color table: black is in entry 0, blue in entry 1, ..., white in entry 15. There are constants defined in `GRAPHICS.H` that contain the corresponding hardware color values: these are `EGA_BLACK`, `EGA_WHITE`, etc. You can also get these values with `getpalette`.

The `setbkcolor(color)` routine behaves differently on an EGA than on a CGA. On an EGA, `setbkcolor` copies the actual color value that's stored in entry `#color` into entry `#0`.

As far as colors are concerned, the VGA driver behaves like the EGA driver; it just has higher resolution (and smaller pixels).

## Error Handling in Graphics Mode

Here's a quick summary of the graphics-mode error-handling functions:

```
=====

grapherrormsg  returns an error message string for the specified errorcode
graphresult    returns an error code for the last graphics operation that
               encountered a problem

=====
```

If an error occurs when a graphics library function is called (such as a font requested with `settextstyle` not being found), an internal error code is set. You retrieve the error code for the last graphics operation that reported an error by calling `graphresult`. The following error return codes are defined:

error code	<i>graphics_errors</i> constant	corresponding error message string
0	<code>grOk</code>	No error
-1	<code>grNoInitGraph</code>	(BGI) graphics not installed (use <code>initgraph</code> )
-2	<code>grNotDetected</code>	Graphics hardware not detected
-3	<code>grFileNotFound</code>	Device driver file not found
-4	<code>grInvalidDriver</code>	Invalid device driver file
-5	<code>grNoLoadMem</code>	Not enough memory to load driver
-6	<code>grNoScanMem</code>	Out of memory in scan fill
-7	<code>grNoFloodMem</code>	Out of memory in flood fill
-8	<code>grFontNotFound</code>	Font file not found
-9	<code>grNoFontMem</code>	Not enough memory to load font
-10	<code>grInvalidMode</code>	Invalid graphics mode for selected driver
-11	<code>grError</code>	Graphics error
-12	<code>grIOError</code>	Graphics I/O error
-13	<code>grInvalidFont</code>	Invalid font file
-14	<code>grInvalidFontNum</code>	Invalid font number
-15	<code>grInvalidDeviceNum</code>	Invalid device number

A call to `grapherrormsg(graphresult)` will return the error strings listed in the previous table.

The error return code accumulates, changing only when a graphics function reports an error. The error return code is reset to 0 only when `initgraph` executes successfully, or when you call `graphresult`. Therefore, if

you want to know which graphics function returned which error, you should store the value of **graphresult** into a temporary variable and then test it.

## State Query

Here's a quick summary of the graphics mode state-query functions:

```
=====
```

<b>getarccoords</b>	returns information about the coordinates of the last call to <b>arc</b> or <b>ellipse</b>
<b>getaspectratio</b>	returns the aspect ratio of the graphics screen
<b>getbkcolor</b>	returns the current background color
<b>getcolor</b>	returns the current drawing color
<b>getfillpattern</b>	returns the user-defined fill pattern
<b>getfillsettings</b>	returns information about the current fill pattern and color
<b>getgraphmode</b>	returns the current graphics mode
<b>getlinesettings</b>	returns the current line style, line pattern, and line thickness
<b>getmaxcolor</b>	returns the current highest valid pixel value
<b>getmaxx</b>	returns the current <i>x</i> resolution
<b>getmaxy</b>	returns the current <i>y</i> resolution
<b>getmoderange</b>	returns the mode range for a given driver
<b>getpalette</b>	returns the current palette and its size
<b>getpixel</b>	returns the color of the pixel at <i>x,y</i>
<b>gettextsettings</b>	returns the current text font, direction, size, and justification
<b>getviewsettings</b>	returns information about the current viewport
<b>getx</b>	returns the <i>x</i> coordinate of the current position (CP)
<b>gety</b>	returns the <i>y</i> coordinate of the current position (CP)

```
=====
```

In each of Turbo C's graphics functions categories there is at least one state-query function. These functions are mentioned under their respective categories and also covered here. Each of the Turbo C graphics state-query functions is named **get<something>** (except in the error-handling category). Some of them take no argument and return a single value representing the requested information; others take a pointer to a structure defined in **GRAPHICS.H**, fill that structure with the appropriate information, and return no value.

The state-query functions for the graphics system control category are **getgraphmode** and **getmoderange**: the former returns an integer representing the current graphics driver and mode, and the latter returns the range of modes supported by a given graphics driver. **getmaxx** and

**getmaxy** return the maximum *x* and *y* screen coordinates for the current graphics mode.

The drawing and filling state-query functions are **getarccoords**, **getaspectratio**, **getfillpattern**, **getfillsettings**, and **getlinesettings**. **getarccoords** fills a structure with coordinates from the last call to **arc** or **ellipse**; **getaspectratio** tells the current mode's aspect ratio, which the graphics system uses to make circles come out round. **getfillpattern** returns the current user-defined fill pattern. **getfillsettings** fills a structure with the current fill pattern and fill color. **getlinesettings** fills a structure with the current line style (solid, dashed, etc.), line width (normal or thick), and line pattern.

In the screen- and viewport-manipulation category, the state-query functions are **getviewsettings**, **getx**, **gety**, and **getpixel**. When you have defined a viewport, you can find out its absolute screen coordinates and whether clipping is active by calling **getviewsettings**, which fills a structure with the information. **getx** and **gety** return the (viewport-relative) *x*- and *y*-coordinates of the CP (current position). **getpixel** returns the color of a specified pixel.

The graphics mode text-output function category contains one all-inclusive state-query function: **gettextsettings**. This function fills a structure with information about the current character font, the direction in which text will be displayed (horizontal or bottom-to-top vertical), the character magnification factor, and the text-string justification (both horizontal and vertical).

Turbo C's color-control function category includes three state-query functions. **getbkcolor** returns the current background color, and **getcolor** returns the current drawing color. **getpalette** fills a structure with the size of the current drawing palette and the palette's contents. **getmaxcolor** returns the highest valid pixel value for the current graphics driver and mode (palette size - 1).

## Additions to TC.EXE

This chapter explains the additions to Turbo C's menus, hot keys, and editor. The original Options/Environment menu in Turbo C's Integrated Environment has been split into two menus (Environments and Directories) with some added options. The new hot key lets you switch back and forth between the Turbo C screen and the saved output screen. Finally, the editor changes affect tab settings, optimal fill, matching delimiter pairs, and editor command keys.

### The (New) Options/Directories Menu

---

This new menu contains some items that were on the Options/Environment menu of Turbo C version 1.0 and two new menu items. The menu items from version 1.0 are Include directories, Library directories (which has been modified; it was singular in version 1.0), Output directory, and Turbo C directory. The two new menu items are Pick file name and Current pick file.

Refer to Chapter 2 in the *Turbo C User's Guide* for descriptions of Include directories, Output directory, and Turbo C directory. Descriptions of Library directories, Pick file name, and Current pick file follow.

#### Library directories

In Turbo C version 1.0, you could specify one library directory with the Library directory menu item. Now you can list multiple library directories, up to a maximum of 127 characters (including whitespace).



Use the following guidelines when entering library directories:

You must separate multiple directory pathnames with a semicolon (;).

Whitespace before and after the semicolon is allowed, but not required.

Relative and absolute pathnames are allowed, including pathnames relative to the logged position in drives other than the current one.

*An Example:*

```
c:\turboc\lib; c:\turboc\mylibs; a:newturbo\mathlibs; a:..\vidlibs
```

See Chapter 3 in this addendum for details on multiple library directories.

### **Pick file name**

This item defines the name of a pick file to load. Entering a name here loads that pick file (if it exists) and defines where Turbo C will save the pick file when you exit. When you change the pick file name, Turbo C saves the current pick file before loading the new one.

If no pick file name is listed here, then Turbo C only writes a pick file if the Current pick file menu item contains a file name.

See Chapter 6 in this addendum for a discussion of pick files.

### **Current pick file**

This menu item shows the file name and location of the current pick file, if there is one. This item is always disabled; it is for information only. Current pick file shows a file name when a default pick file is loaded or when you type one in with the Pick file name menu item. If you change the pick file name or exit the integrated environment, Turbo C stores the current pick list information in this listed pick file.

## **The (Modified) Options/Environment Menu**

---

This menu, containing six items, is quite different from the version 1.0 Options/Environment menu. Three of the items on this menu (Backup source files, Edit auto save, and Zoomed windows) exist in version 1.0; only the second has been changed. The other three items on this menu are new in version 1.5: Config auto save, Tab size, and Screen size.

### **Backup source files**

*(Same as version 1.0)* By default, Turbo C automatically creates a backup of the file in the editor when you do a File/Save; the backup file is FILENAME.BAK (where FILENAME is the name of the file in the editor). You can turn this backup feature *on* and *off* with this toggle.

### **Edit auto save**

*(Was Auto save edit in version 1.0)* With this toggled to *on*, Turbo C automatically saves your file in the editor whenever you use Run or File/OS shell (if the file has been modified since the last time you saved it).

### **Config auto save**

This is a new menu item. Normally, Turbo C saves the current configuration (writes it out to disk) only when you select Options/Store options. With Config auto save *on*, Turbo C also saves the file whenever you select Run or File/OS shell, or when you exit the integrated environment (if the configuration file has never been saved or has been at all modified since it was last saved).

With Config auto save *on*, if the configuration file has not yet been saved, Turbo C chooses a file name for the auto saved file. This is the name of the last configuration file you stored or retrieved, or TCCONFIG.TC (in the current directory) if you haven't loaded, retrieved, or saved a configuration file yet.

### **Zoomed windows**

*(Same as version 1.0)* If your Turbo C integrated environment screen is set up with the Edit window and Message window both showing, selecting Zoomed windows...*on* zooms both windows to full screen, with the active window visible.

Use *F6* to switch from one window to the other, just as you do when both windows are showing.

To "unzoom" the windows (return to the setup where both windows are showing) just select Zoomed windows...*off*.

## Tab size

This is a new menu item. When the editor Tab mode is *on* and you press the *Tab* key, the editor inserts a tab character in the file and the cursor jumps to the next tab stop. This menu item allows you to dictate how far apart the tab stops are; any number in the range 2 through 16 is allowed (the default is 8).

To change the tab size, select Tab size, type in the size you prefer, and press *Enter*. Voila! The editor redisplayes all tabs in the size you selected. You can save this new tab size in your configuration file (select Store options from the Options menu).

## Screen size

This is a new menu item. When you select Screen size, another menu appears; the items on this Screen size menu allow you to specify whether your integrated environment screen displays text in 25, 43, or 50 lines. One or two of these items is enabled, depending on the type of video adapter in your PC.

### 25 line standard display

This is the standard PC display: 25 lines by 80 columns. This menu item is always enabled; it's the only screen size available to systems with a Monochrome Display Adapter (MDA) or Color Graphics Adapter (CGA).

### 43 line EGA display

If your PC is equipped with an EGA, this menu item is enabled, as is 25 line standard display (but 50 line VGA display is disabled). Select 43 line EGA display to transform your text to 43 lines by 80 columns.

### 50 line VGA display

If your system includes a VGA, this menu item is enabled, along with 25 line standard display (but 43 line EGA display is disabled). Select 50 line VGA display to transform your text to 50 lines by 80 columns.

## New Hot Key

---

Turbo C version 1.5 has a new hot key: *Alt-F5* ("flip to/from saved screen").

When you are using TC, you see one of two screens—the integrated environment screen itself or the *output screen*. The integrated environment screen is what you see when you edit, compile, link, and debug your

programs. The output screen is what you see when you run a Turbo C executable program or temporarily exit to DOS through the File/OS shell menu command. With some exceptions, Turbo C is able to continuously preserve the contents of this screen in a “saved output screen” buffer, updating it each time you select Run or File/OS shell. To view this saved screen, press *Alt-F5* (the “saved screen” hot key).

## *How Long Will Turbo C Save the Screen?*

---

Under certain conditions, Turbo C preserves the saved screen’s contents so that—when you select File/OS shell or run a program—the screen picks up where you left off. Whenever you run a program from the integrated environment or select File/OS shell, TC resets the video screen mode back to the mode that was in effect when you started TC from the DOS prompt (the “start-up mode”). There are two general cases that cause Turbo C to discard the contents of the buffer containing the saved output screen:

1. You do a compile or a link; the compiler and linker both use the area in memory where the saved screen is preserved.
2. The video mode of the screen when you started TC is incompatible with the mode of the saved output screen.

## *Changes to the Turbo C Editor*

---

Turbo C’s built-in interactive editor (in TC.EXE) contains a few new features.

- **Setting Tab Sizes:** You can now set tab sizes, from 2 to 16 columns per tab stop.
- **Optimal fill:** In Autoindent mode, the editor now optimally fills leading blank space with a combination of tab characters and spaces, to make smaller files.
- **Pair matching:** The editor will find matching pairs of various delimiters in your source code for you.
- **Editor key reassignment:** With TCINST, you can customize your own editor command keys.

This section of the addendum covers these new editor features. For a comprehensive explanation of the interactive editor, refer to Appendix A in the *Turbo C Reference Guide*.

## Setting Tab Sizes

---

The new menu item **Tab size** on the **Options/Environment** menu allows you to dictate how far apart the editor tab stops are; any number in the range 2 through 16 is allowed (the default is 8).

To change the way tabs are displayed in a file, just change **Tab size** to the size you prefer, and the editor redisplay all tabs in that file in the size you selected. The new tab size setting is stored in your configuration file when you save it (select **Store options** from the **Options** menu).

**Note:** When the editor **Tab mode** is *off*, pressing the tab key inserts enough space characters to move the cursor to the next “soft” tab stop. Soft tab stops align with the first letter of each word in the line of text immediately above the current line.

**Another Note:** When you send a marked block of text from the editor to a file (or to PRN) with the *Ctrl-K W* command, the editor treats all tab characters as *hardware tabs* and writes (or prints) them “as is”. This generally yields tab stops at every eighth column. However, when you send text from the editor to the printer with the *Ctrl-K P* command, the editor treats tab characters as *software tabs* and prints them as the appropriate number of space characters (equal to the tab size you selected with **Tab size**).

## Autoindent and Optimal Fill

---

Autoindent is an editor feature you toggle *on* or *off* in one of two ways:

- When in the Edit window, type *Ctrl-O I* or *Ctrl-Q I*. (Simultaneously hold down the Control key *and* O or Q, then type I.)
- When in TCINST (the Turbo C Installation program), select **Setup environment**, then toggle **Autoindent mode** to *on*.

With Autoindent mode and Insert mode both *on*, the editor automatically indents a new line to align with the first character in the previous line.

Under certain conditions, the editor fills the leading blank space of the new, indented line with an optimal combination of tab characters and space characters. (An optimal combination is one that uses the least number of characters.) These are the conditions necessary for optimal filling to occur:

1. Autoindent mode, Insert mode, and Tab mode are all *on*.

2. You have just pressed *Enter* to move the cursor from the end of an indented line down to a new, blank line. (The editor inserts enough leading space characters to align the cursor below the first character of the line it just left.)
3. You have not moved the cursor off of that new line. (However, you can use the *Left* and *Right* arrow keys, the *Tab* key, the *Backspace* key, and the space bar to move the cursor horizontally on the new line.)
4. You type a character or command, or move to another line.

When this sequence occurs, the editor replaces the leading whitespace (or space and tab characters) in the new line with a combination of tab characters and space characters, yielding the same amount of leading space with fewer characters.

### Examples

- Tab size in the Options/Environment menu is set to 8 (tab stops are in columns 1, 9, 17, 25, ...); Autoindent, Tab, and Insert modes are *on*; and the cursor is at the end of a line that begins at column 27.
  - You press *Enter* to insert a new line; the editor positions the cursor at column 27 in that new line.
  - Without moving the cursor, you type a character on the new line.
  - The editor fills the beginning of the new line with three tab characters (to column 25) and two space characters (to column 27) for a total of five inserted fill characters.
- If, in this same example, Tab size is set to 5 (tab stops in columns 1, 6, 11, 16, 21, 26, ...), the editor fills with five tab characters (to column 26) and one space character.
- Or if Tab size is set to 6 (tab stops 1, 7, 13, 19, 25, ...), and you move the cursor to column 18 before typing your first characters, the editor fills with two tab characters (to column 13) and five space characters (to column 18).

### *How to Turn Off Optimal Fill*

With Autoindent mode and Insert mode *on* (but Tab mode *off*), the editor still indents the new line to align with the beginning of the previous line, but it does this by filling with space characters only (no tabs).

## *Pair Matching*

---

There you are, debugging your source file that is full of functions, parenthesized expressions, nested comments, and a whole slew of other constructs that use delimiter pairs. In fact, your file is teeming with

- braces: { and }
- angle brackets: < and >
- parentheses: ( and )
- square brackets: [ and ]
- comment markers: /\* and \*/
- double quotes: " and "
- single quotes: ' and '

Finding the match to a particular brace can be tricky. Suppose you have a complicated expression with a number of nested subexpressions, and you want to make sure all the parentheses are properly balanced. Or say you're at the beginning of a function that stretches over several screens, and you want to jump to the end of that function. With Turbo C's handy pair-matching commands, the solution is at your fingertips. Here's what you do:

1. Place the cursor on the delimiter in question (for example, the opening brace of some function that stretches for a couple of screens).
2. To locate the mate to this selected delimiter, simply press *Ctrl-Q Ctrl-]*. (In the example given, the mate should be at the end of the function.)
3. The editor immediately moves the cursor to the delimiter that matches the one you had selected. If it moves to the one you had intended to be the mate, you know that the intervening code contains no unmatched delimiters of that type. If it highlights the wrong delimiter, you know there's trouble in River City; now all you need to do is track down the source of the problem.

## **A Few Details About Pair Matching**

We've told you the basics of Turbo C's "Match Pair" commands; now you need some details about what you can and can't do with these commands, and notes about a few subtleties to keep in mind. This section covers the following points:

- There are actually two “Match Pair” editor commands: one for forward matching and the other for backward matching. The two commands are

`Ctrl-Q Ctrl-[`      Match pair (forward)

`Ctrl-Q Ctrl-]`      Match pair (backward)

- The way the editor searches for comment delimiters ( `/*` and `*/` ) is slightly different from the other searches.
- If there is no mate for the delimiter you’ve selected, the editor doesn’t move the cursor.

## *Two Commands for Directional Matching*

Two “Match Pair” commands are necessary because some delimiters are not *directional*, while others are.

For example, suppose you tell the editor to find the match for an opening brace ( `{` ) or an opening square bracket ( `[` ). The editor knows that the matching delimiter can’t be located *before* the one you’ve selected, so it searches forward for a match. Opening braces and opening square brackets are directional: the editor knows in which direction to search for the mate, so it doesn’t matter which “Match Pair” command you give. Given either command, the editor still searches in the correct direction.

Similarly, if you tell the editor to find the mate to a closing brace ( `}` ) or a closing parenthesis ( `)` ), it knows that the mate can’t be located *after* the selected delimiter, so it automatically searches backward for a match. Again, because these delimiters are directional, it doesn’t matter which “Match Pair” command you give: the editor always searches in the correct direction.

However, if you tell the editor to find the match for a double quote ( `"` ) or a single quote ( `'` ), it doesn’t automatically know which way to go. You must specify the search direction by giving the correct “Match Pair” command. If you give the command `Ctrl-Q Ctrl-[`, the editor searches forward for the match; if you give the command `Ctrl-Q Ctrl-]`, it searches backward for the match.

The following table summarizes the delimiter pairs, whether they imply search direction, and whether they are nestable. (Nestable delimiters are explained after this table.)



<i>Delimiter Pair</i>	<i>Direction Implied?</i>	<i>Are They Nestable?</i>
{ }	Yes	Yes
( )	Yes	Yes
[ ]	Yes	Yes
< >	Yes	Yes
/* */	Yes	Yes and No
" "	No	No
' '	No	No

### Nestable Delimiters

What does *nestable* mean? Simply that, when searching for the mate to a directional delimiter, the editor keeps track of how many “delimiter levels” it enters and exits during the search.

This is best illustrated with some examples:

**Search for match to square bracket or parenthesis:**

<p>Matched pair</p> <pre> : .....: :      : :      : array[arr2[x]] :      : :      : :.. : : Matched pair</pre>	<p>Matched pair</p> <pre> : .....: :      : :      : ( (x&gt;0) &amp;&amp; (y&gt;0) ) :      :      : :      :      : :..:      :..: : : Matched pair : : Matched pair</pre>
--	--

### The Search for Comment Delimiters

Because comment delimiters are two-character delimiters, you must take care when highlighting one for a “Match Pair” search. In either case, the editor only recognizes the *first* of the two characters: the / part of a /\* comment delimiter, or the \* part of a \*/ delimiter. If you place the cursor on

the *second* character in either of these delimiters, the editor won't know what you're looking for, so it won't do any searching at all.

Also, as shown in the preceding table, comment delimiters are sometimes nestable, sometimes not ("Yes and No"). This is not a vagary or an inability to decide: It is a test dependent on multiple conditions. ANSI-compatible C programs cannot contain nested comments, but Turbo C provides an optional "Nested comments" feature (the menu item Nested comments in the Options/Compiler/Source menu) that you can toggle ON and OFF. This feature affects the nestability of comment delimiters when it comes to pair matching.

- ▣ If Nested comments is toggled *on*, the editor treats comment delimiters as nestable and keeps track of the delimiter levels it enters and exits in the search for a match.
- ▣ If Nested comments is toggled *off*, the editor does not treat comment delimiters as nestable; when a */\** pair is selected, the first *\*/* pair the editor finds is the match (and vice versa).

**Note:** If unmatched delimiters of the same type in comments, quotes, or conditional compilation sections fall between the matched pair, this affects the search.

Here are some examples to illustrate these differences:

**Nested comments toggled ON--forward search with ^Q ^[:**

```
/* /* /* /* here are some nested comments */ */ */ */
:
:.....Match Level Selected
:
:
Match Level Found.....:
```

**Note:** Backward search from the "Found" *\*/* will yield the "Selected" */\** when Nested comments is toggled ON.

**Nested comments toggled OFF--forward search with ^Q ^[:**

```
/* /* /* /* here are some nested comments */ */ */ */
:
:.....Match Level Selected
:
:
Match Level Found.....:
```

Nested comments toggled OFF--backward search with ^Q ^]:

```
/* /* /* /* here are some nested comments */ */ */ */
      :                                     :
      :.....Match Level Found              :
                                     :
                                     :
Match Level Selected.....:
```

## *Editor Hot Key Assignment*

---

*Note: This feature is covered in detail in "The New TCINST" in this addendum, so we'll cover just the basics here.*

Turbo C's interactive editor provides many editing functions, which are assigned to certain hot keys (or hot key combinations); these are explained in detail in Appendix A of the *Turbo C Reference Guide*.

TCINST is Turbo C's optional customization (or "installation") program: one of its menus allows you to assign the Turbo C editing functions to other hot keys, if you prefer. (This is known as "rebinding the keys".)

To change Turbo C's editor commands, follow this general procedure:

1. Load TCINST.EXE (at the DOS prompt, type `tcinst` and press *Enter*), then select the Editor commands menu. The **Install Editor** screen comes up, displaying three columns of text.
  - The first column (on the left) describes the editing functions available.
  - The second column lists the *Primary* keystrokes; what you press to invoke a particular editing function.
  - The third column lists the *Secondary* keystrokes; these are optional alternate keystrokes you can also press to invoke the same editing function.
2. The bottom lines of text in the **Install Editor** screen summarize the keys you use to change entries in the Primary and Secondary columns. Press *Enter* to enter the keystroke-editing mode, then use the *Left* and *Right* arrow keys to move the highlight bar to either the Primary or Secondary column.
3. Use the *Up* and *Down* arrow keys to highlight the editing command you intend to rekey.
4. Press *Enter* to select the highlighted editing command; the defined keystroke(s) for that command appears in a pop-up window.

5. Press *Backspace* to delete individual keystrokes from right to left in the pop-up window, or press *F3* to clear all defined keystrokes from the window.
6. Keystroke combinations come in three flavors: **WordStar-like**, **Ignore case**, and **Verbatim**. Press *F4* to cycle through these until the one you want is highlighted on the bottom line of the screen. Refer to “The New TCINST” in this addendum for more information about these three variations.
7. Type in the new defined keystrokes for that editing function (up to a maximum of six keystrokes). If you want to erase the last keystroke you assigned, press *Backspace*. If you want to abandon the new key assignments to that function, press *F2* to restore the originally-assigned keys, or *Esc* to restore them *and* leave the keystroke-editing mode.
8. Once you’re satisfied with the new (or restored) key assignment(s) to a given function, press *Enter* to accept them.
9. When you’ve finished assigning keys (you’ve accepted the last modification), press *Esc* to leave the **Install Editor** screen and return to TCINST’s main menu.

**Note:** If you override a standard Turbo C hot key, you will not be able to use that Turbo C shortcut while in the editor.



## Changes to Command-Line Turbo C

To provide you with more power and choices in organizing your files and directories, Turbo C version 1.5 has extended and enhanced certain features. The compiler now

- ▣ supports multiple library directories
- ▣ provides extended syntax for the `-L`, `-I`, and `-D` command-line options

With the ability to specify multiple library directories, you can now put your custom and third-party library files in a separate directory that the compiler will search (instead of just in the current directory). With the extended command-line syntax, you have greater flexibility in naming directory paths and defining symbols.

In this chapter we cover the enhancements to command-line Turbo C (TCC.EXE): refer to Chapter 2 in this addendum for information about changes to Turbo C's integrated environment.

**A Recap:** In the original version (1.0) of TCC.EXE, you could do the following on the command line:

- ▣ specify multiple include directories by listing multiple `-Idirname` options (one per directory)
- ▣ specify the standard library directory with a single `-Ldirname` option
- ▣ define multiple symbolic constants by listing multiple `-Dxxx` options (one per define)

**The New Turbo C:** You can now direct Turbo C to search multiple directories for libraries. In hand with this, the syntax for the *library directories* (`-L`), *include directories* (`-I`), and *define symbols* (`-D`) command-line

options has been extended to allow multiple listings with a single option (this is known as “ganging” options).

## Extended Syntax for These Options

---

The library directory option (Options/Directories/Library directory in TC and `-L` in TCC) has been enhanced to allow multiple directories. Additionally, TCC’s syntax for the `-I` and `-D` command-line options has been extended to allow ganged entries (a feature previously available only in the Turbo C integrated environment).

In a nutshell, here’s the revised syntax for these three TCC options:

**Library directories:** `-Ldirname[;dirname;...]`

**Include directories:** `-Idirname[;dirname;...]`

**Defines:** `-Dsymbol[=string][;symbol[=string];...]`

The parameter *dirname* used with `-L` and `-I` can be any directory path name.

The parameter *symbol* used with `-D` is an identifier. You can optionally give it a value (like this: `-Dtime=year` or `-Dfill=no` or `-Dmcopr=0`). If you don’t assign a value to *symbol* (like this: `-Dxxx`), Turbo C will `#define` it to a single space character.

You can enter these multiple directories and defines on the command line in the following ways:

- You can “gang” multiple entries with a single `-L`, `-I`, or `-D` option, separating ganged entries with a semicolon, like this:

```
-Ldirname1;dirname2;dirname3 -Iincl;inc2;inc3 -Dxxx;yyy=1;zzz=NO
```

- You can place more than one of each option on the command line, like this:

```
-Ldirname1 -Ldirname2 -Ldirname3 -Iincl -Iinc2 -Iinc3 -Dxxx -Dyyy=1 -Dzzz=NO
```

- You can mix ganged and multiple listings, like this:

```
-Ldirname1;dirname2 -Ldirname3 -Iincl;inc2 -Iinc3 -Dxxx -Dyyy=1;zzz=NO
```

If you list multiple `-L`, `-I`, or `-D` options on the command line, the result is cumulative: the compiler will search all the directories listed, or define the specified constants, in order from left to right.

**Note:** The integrated environment (TC.EXE) now also supports multiple library directories (under the Options/Directories/Library directories

menu item), using the same “ganged entry” syntax as the Include directories and Defines menu items. Refer to the chapter “Additions to TC.EXE” in this addendum for more information.

## *Implicit vs. User-specified Library Files*

---

Turbo C recognizes two types of library files: *implicit* and *user-specified* (also known as *explicit* library files).

- Implicit library files are the ones Turbo C automatically links in. These are the Cx.LIB files, EMU.LIB or FP87.LIB, MATHx.LIB, and the start-up object files (C0x.OBJ).
- User-specified library files are the ones you explicitly list on the command line or in a project file; these are file names with a .LIB extension.

## *The Enhanced Library File-Search Algorithms*

---

Turbo C version 1.0 searched for user-specified libraries only as they were specified (nowhere else), and it only searched for implicit libraries in a single library directory.

In version 1.5, the way Turbo C searches for library files has been extended; the new search algorithm is very similar to the way it searches for the `#include` files listed in your source code. To wit: If you put an `#include <somefile.h>` statement in your source code, Turbo C will search for SOMEFILE.H only in the specified include directories. If, on the other hand, you put an `#include "somefile.h"` statement in your code, Turbo C will search for SOMEFILE.H first in the current directory; if it does not find the header file there, it will then search in the specified include directories.

These are the new library file-search algorithms:

- **Implicit libraries:** Turbo C searches for implicit libraries only in the specified library directories; this is similar to `#include <somefile.h>`.
- **Explicit libraries:** Where Turbo C searches for explicit (user-specified) libraries depends in part on how you list the library file name.
  - If you list an explicit library file name with no drive or directory (like this: `mylib.lib`), Turbo C will search for that library in the current directory first. Then (if the first search was unsuccessful), it will look in the specified library directories; this is similar to `#include "somefile.h"`.



- If you list a user-specified library with drive and/or directory information (like this: `c:\mystuff\mylib1.lib`), Turbo C will search *only* in the location you explicitly listed as part of the library path name, and not in the specified library directories.

The new version 1.5 library-search algorithm is upwardly compatible with the version 1.0 library search, which means that your code written under version 1.0 will work without problems in the new version.

## *Using -L and -I in Configuration Files*

---

If you do not understand how to use TURBOC.CFG (the command-line configuration file) with TCC.EXE, refer to these sections in the *Turbo C User's Guide*: "The TURBOC.CFG File" in Chapter 3, and "Writing the Configuration File" in Chapter 1.

The `-L` and `-I` options you list on the command line take priority over those in the configuration file. How this works is described in "The TURBOC.CFG File" (see reference): the explanation of `-I` option priority given there now also applies to `-L` options.

## *An Example With Notes*

---

Here is an example of using a TCC command line that incorporates multiple library directories (`-L`) and include directories (`-I`) options.

1. You are logged into `C:\TURBOC`, where TCC.EXE resides. Your A drive's current logged position is `A:\ASTROLIB`.
2. Your include files (`.H` or "header" files) are located in `C:\TURBOC\INCLUDE`.
3. Your startup files (`C0T.OBJ`, `C0S.OBJ`, ... , `C0H.OBJ`) are in `C:\TURBOC\STARTUPS`.
4. Your standard Turbo C library files (`CS.LIB`, `CM.LIB`, ..., `MATHS.LIB`, `MATHM.LIB`, ... , `EMU.LIB`, `FP87.LIB`, etc.) are in `C:\TURBOC\LIB`.
5. Your custom library files for star systems (which you created and manage with TLIB) are in `C:\TURBOC\STARLIB`. One of these libraries is `PARX.LIB`.
6. Your third-party-generated library files for quasars are in the A drive, in `A:\ASTROLIB`; one of these libraries is `WARP.LIB`.

Under this configuration you enter the following TCC command line:

```
tcc -mm -Lstartups;lib;starlib -Iinclude orion umaj parx.lib a:\astrolib\warp.lib
```

TCC will compile ORION.C and UMAJ.C to .OBJ files, then link them with the medium model start-up code (COM.OBJ), the medium model libraries (CM.LIB, MATHM.LIB), the standard floating-point emulation library (EMU.LIB), and the user-specified libraries (PARX.LIB and WARP.LIB), producing an executable file named ORION.EXE.

The compiler will search C:\TURBOC\INCLUDE for the include files in your source code.

It will search for the startup code in C:\TURBOC\STARTUPS (then stop because they're there); it will search for the standard libraries in C:\TURBOC\STARTUPS (not there) then in C:\TURBOC\LIB (search ends because they're there).

When searching for the user-specified library PARX.LIB, the compiler first looks in the current directory, C:\TURBOC. Not finding the library there, the compiler then searches the library directories in order: first C:\TURBOC\STARTUPS, then C:\TURBOC\LIB, then C:\TURBOC\STARLIB (where it locates PARX.LIB).

For the library WARP.LIB, an explicit path is given (A:\ASTROLIB\WARP.LIB), so the compiler only looks there.



## New and Modified Functions and Variables

*The information in this chapter is meant to supplement the global variable and function lookup sections (Chapters 1 and 2) of your Turbo C Reference Guide.*

## New and Modified Global Variables

---

*These descriptions of global variables supplement Chapter 1 in your Turbo C Reference Guide.*

---

<i><b>_argc, _argv</b></i>		<i><b>new</b></i>
Names	<i>_argc</i> – count of command-line arguments <i>_argv</i> – array of command-line arguments	
Usage	extern int <i>_argc</i> ; extern char ** <i>_argv</i> ;	
Declared in	dos.h	
Description	<i>_argc</i> has the value of <i>argc</i> passed to <i>main()</i> when the program started.  <i>_argv</i> points to an array containing the original command-line arguments (the elements of <i>argv[]</i> ) passed to <i>main()</i> when the program started.	

---

---

<i><b>directvideo</b></i>		<i><b>new</b></i>
Name	<i>directvideo</i> – direct output to video RAM flag	
Usage	extern int <i>directvideo</i> ;	
Declared in	conio.h	
Description	<i>directvideo</i> controls whether your program's console output goes directly to the video RAM ( <i>directvideo</i> = 1) or goes via ROM BIOS calls ( <i>directvideo</i> = 0).  The default value is <i>directvideo</i> = 1 (console output goes directly to video RAM). In order to use <i>directvideo</i> = 1, your system's video hardware must be identical to IBM display adapters. Setting <i>directvideo</i> = 0 allows your	

---

console output to work on any system that is IBM BIOS-compatible.

---

<b><i>_heaplen, _stklen</i></b>	<b><i>modified</i></b>
---------------------------------	------------------------

---

**Names**            *\_heaplen* – heap length variable  
                     *\_stklen* – stack length variable

**Usage**            extern unsigned *\_heaplen*;  
                     extern unsigned *\_stklen*;

**Declared in**      dos.h

**Description**     *\_heaplen* specifies the size of the near heap in the small data models (tiny, small, and medium). *\_heaplen* does not exist in the large data models (compact, large, and huge) as they do not have a near heap.

*\_stklen* specifies the size of the stack for all six memory models. The minimum stack size allowed is 128 words; if you give a smaller value, *\_stklen* is automatically adjusted to the minimum. The default stack size is 4K.

*In the small and medium models*, the data segment size is computed as follows:

data segment [small, medium] = global data + heap + stack

If *\_heaplen* is set to 0, the program allocates 64K bytes for the data segment and the effective heap size is

64K - (global data + stack) bytes.

By default, *\_heaplen* = 0, so you'll get a 64K data segment unless you specify a particular *\_heaplen* value.

*In the tiny model*, everything (including code) is in the same segment, so the data segment computations are adjusted to include the code plus 256 bytes for the Program Segment Prefix.

data segment[tiny] = 256 + code + global data + heap + stack

If *\_heaplen* = 0 in the tiny model, the effective heap size is obtained by subtracting the PSP, code, global data and stack from 64K.

*In the compact and large models*, there is no near heap, so the data segment is simply:

data segment [compact, large] = global data + stack

*In the huge model*, the stack is a separate segment, and each module has its own data segment.

---

<b><u>_8087</u></b>	<i>modified</i>
---------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>_8087</code> – coprocessor chip flag
<b>Usage</b>	<code>extern int _8087;</code>
<b>Declared in</b>	<code>dos.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>_8087</code> variable is set to 1 if the start-up code auto-detection logic detects a floating-point coprocessor (an 8087, 80287, or 80387), or if the 87 environment variable is set to <b>Y</b> (<code>SET 87=Y</code>). The <code>_8087</code> variable is set to 0 otherwise.</p> <p>(Refer to Chapter 9 in the <i>Turbo C User's Guide</i> for more information about the 87 environment variable.)</p> <p>You must have floating-point code in your program for the <code>_8087</code> variable to be set to 1.</p>

## New and Modified Functions

---

*These descriptions of functions supplement Chapter 2 in your Turbo C Reference Guide. Most of the functions described here are new, though a few of these entries give updated information about functions described in the reference guide.*

<b>arc</b>	<i>graphics</i>
<b>Name</b>	arc – draws a circular arc
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far arc(int x, int y, int stangle, int endangle,              int radius);</pre>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<pre>void far circle(int x, int y, int radius); void far ellipse(int x, int y, int stangle, int endangle,                  int xradius, int yradius);  void far getarccoords(struct arccoordstype                      far *arccoords);  void far getaspectratio(int far *xasp, int far *yasp); void far pieslice(int x, int y, int stangle, int endangle,                   int radius);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>Each of the four draw functions described here (<b>arc</b>, <b>circle</b>, <b>ellipse</b>, and <b>pieslice</b>) draws the outline of its shape in the current drawing color.</p> <p><b>arc</b> draws a circular arc centered at (x,y) with a radius given by <i>radius</i>. The arc travels from <i>stangle</i> to <i>endangle</i>. If <i>stangle</i> = 0 and <i>endangle</i> = 360, the call to <b>arc</b> will draw a complete circle.</p> <p><b>circle</b> draws a circle, with its center at (x,y) and a radius given by <i>radius</i>.</p>



**ellipse** draws an elliptical arc, with its center at  $(x,y)$  and the horizontal and vertical axes given by *xradius* and *yradius*, respectively. The ellipse travels from *stangle* to *endangle*. If *stangle* = 0 and *endangle* = 360, the call to **ellipse** will draw a complete ellipse.

**pieslice** draws and fills a pie slice centered at  $(x,y)$  with a radius given by *radius*. The slice travels from *stangle* to *endangle*. The slice is outlined in the current drawing color and then filled using the current fill pattern and fill color.

The angles for **arc**, **ellipse**, and **pieslice** are counterclockwise, with 0 degrees at 3 o'clock, 90 degrees at 12 o'clock, etc.

Each graphics driver and graphics mode has an aspect ratio associated with it. The aspect ratio is used by the **arc**, **circle**, and **pieslice** routines as a scaling factor to make circles round on the screen. This ratio can be computed by calling *getaspectratio*, then manipulating *\*xasp* and *\*yasp*.

The *y* aspect factor, *\*yasp*, is normalized to 10,000; on all graphics adapters except the VGA, *\*xasp* (the *x* aspect factor) is less than *\*yasp* because the pixels are taller than they're wide. On the VGA, which has "square" pixels, *\*xasp* = *\*yasp*. In general, the relationship between *\*yasp* and *\*xasp* can be stated as:

$$\begin{aligned} *yasp &= 10,000 \\ *xasp &\leq 10,000 \end{aligned}$$

**getarccoords** fills in the **arccoordstype** structure pointed to by *arccoords* with information about the last call to **arc**. The **arccoordstype** structure is defined in GRAPHICS.H as follows:

```
struct arccoordstype {
    int x, y;
    int xstart, ystart, xend, yend;
};
```

The members of this structure are used to specify the center point  $(x,y)$ , the starting position  $(xstart, ystart)$ , and the ending position  $(xend, yend)$  of the arc. These values are useful if you need to make a line meet at the end of an arc.

**Return value**      If an error occurs while filling the pie slice, **graphresult** will return a value of -6.

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0.

**See also**          **getfillsettings**

### Example

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;           /* will request autodetection */

    struct arccoordstype arcinfo;
    int xasp, yasp;
    long xlong;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");        /*initialize graphics */

    /* Draw a 90 degree arc with radius of 50 */
    arc(150, 150, 0, 89, 50);

    /* Get the coordinates of the arc and connect ends */
    getarccoords(&arcinfo);
    line(arcinfo.xstart, arcinfo.ystart, arcinfo.xend, arcinfo.yend);

    /* Draw a circle */
    circle(150, 150, 100);

    /* Draw an ellipse inside the circle */
    ellipse(150, 150, 0, 359, 100, 50);

    /* Draw and fill a pieslice */
    setcolor(WHITE);                               /* white outline */
    setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, LIGHTRED);
    pieslice(100, 100, 0, 134, 49);
    setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, LIGHTBLUE);
    pieslice(100, 100, 135, 225, 49);
    setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, WHITE);
    pieslice(100, 100, 225, 360, 49);

    /* Draw a "square" rectangle */
    getaspectratio(&xasp, &yasp);
    xlong = (100L * (long)yasp) / (long)xasp;
    rectangle(0, 0, (int)xlong, 100);

    closegraph();
}
```

---

## **assert** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>assert</b> – tests a condition and possibly aborts
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;assert.h&gt; #include &lt;stdio.h&gt; void assert(int <i>test</i>);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	assert.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>assert</b> is a macro that expands to an <b>if</b> statement; if <i>test</i> in the expanded macro fails, <b>assert</b> prints a message and aborts the program (via a call to <b>abort</b>).</p> <p>The message <b>assert</b> prints is:</p> <pre>Assertion failed: &lt;test&gt;, file &lt;filename&gt;, line &lt;linenum&gt;</pre> <p>The <i>filename</i> and <i>linenum</i> listed in the message are the source file name and line number where the <b>assert</b> macro appears.</p> <p>If you place the <code>#define NDEBUG</code> directive (“no debugging”) in the source code before the <code>#include &lt;assert.h&gt;</code> directive, the effect is to comment out the <b>assert</b> statement.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This macro is available on some UNIX systems, including Systems III and V.
<b>See also</b>	<b>abort</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
/* ASSERTST.C: add an item to a list, verify that the item is not NULL */
#include <assert.h>
#include <stdio.h>

struct ITEM {
    int key;
    int value;
};

void additem(struct ITEM *itemptr)
{
    assert(itemptr != NULL);           /* this is line 13 */
    /* ... add the item ... */
}

main()
```

```

{
    additem(NULL);
}

```

## Program Output

Assertion failed: itemptr != NULL, file C:\TURBOC\ASSERTST.C, line 13

<b>bar</b>	<i>graphics</i>
<b>Name</b>	<b>bar</b> – draws a bar
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far bar(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>, int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>);</pre>
<b>Related functions</b>	<pre>void far bar3d(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>, int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>,                int <i>depth</i>, int <i>topflag</i>);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>bar</b> draws a filled-in rectangular bar. The bar is filled using the current fill pattern and fill color. <b>bar</b> does not outline the bar; to outline a two-dimensional bar, use <b>bar3d</b> with <i>depth</i> = 0.</p> <p><b>bar3d</b> draws a three-dimensional rectangular bar, then fills it in using the current fill pattern and fill color. The 3-D outline of the bar is drawn in the current line style and color. The bar's depth, in pixels, is given by <i>depth</i>. The <i>topflag</i> parameter governs whether or not a 3-D top is put on the bar. If <i>topflag</i> is non-zero, a top is put on; otherwise, no top is put on the bar (making it possible to stack several bars on top of one another).</p> <p>In both functions, the upper-left and lower-right corners of the rectangle are given by (<i>left</i>,<i>top</i>) and (<i>right</i>,<i>bottom</i>), respectively.</p> <p>To calculate a typical depth for <b>bar3d</b>, take 25% of the width of the bar, like this:</p> <pre>bar3d(left, top, right, bottom, (right - left)/4, 1);</pre>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**            **getbkcolor, getfillsettings, getlinestyle, graphresult, rectangle**

### **Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;           /* will request autodetection */
    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");        /* initialize graphics */
    setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, MAGENTA);
    bar3d(100, 10, 200, 100, 5, 1);
    setfillstyle(HATCH_FILL, RED);
    bar(30, 30, 80, 80);
    closegraph();
};
```

---

<b>bar3d</b>	<i>graphics</i>
--------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>bar3d</b> – draws a 3-D bar
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far bar3d(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>, int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>,                   int <i>depth</i>, int <i>topflag</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>bar</b>

---

## **bsearch** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>bsearch</b> – binary search
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt; void *bsearch(const void *key, const void *base,               size_t nelem, size_t width,               int (*fcmp)(const void *, const void *));</pre>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<pre>void *lfind(const void *key, const void *base,             size_t *pnelem, size_t width,             int (*fcmp)(const void *, const void *));  void *lsearch(const void *key, void *base,               size_t *pnelem, size_t width,               int (*fcmp)(const void *, const void *));</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	stdlib.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>These functions have the same description as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>, with the following exceptions:</p> <p><i>Revised arguments in prototypes:</i></p> <p>The type <code>size_t</code> is defined with <code>typedef</code> to be an unsigned integer.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▣ <code>nelem</code> gives the number of elements in the table (bsearch only)</li><li>▣ <code>pnelem</code> points to the number of elements in the table (lfind and lsearch only)</li><li>▣ <code>width</code> specifies the number of bytes in each table entry</li></ul> <p><i>New description of the comparison routine:</i></p> <p><code>*fcmp</code>, the comparison routine, is called with two arguments, <code>elem1</code> and <code>elem2</code>. Each argument points to an item to be compared. The comparison function compares each of the pointed-to items (<code>*elem1</code> and <code>*elem2</code>), and returns an integer based on the results of the comparison. Typically, <code>elem1</code> is the argument <code>key</code>, and <code>elem2</code> is a pointer to an element in the table being searched.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	These functions return the same values as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> .

*New description for return from comparison routine:*

For **bsearch**, the *\*fcmp* return value is

< 0	if	<i>*elem1</i> < <i>*elem2</i>
== 0	if	<i>*elem1</i> == <i>*elem2</i>
> 0	if	<i>*elem1</i> > <i>*elem2</i>

For **lsearch** and **lfind**, only equality matters, so the *\*fcmp* return value is

== 0	if	<i>*elem1</i> == <i>*elem2</i>
!= 0	if	<i>*elem1</i> is different from <i>*elem2</i>

---

<b>calloc</b>	<i>modified</i>
---------------	-----------------

---

Name	<b>calloc</b> – allocates main memory
Usage	#include <stdlib.h> void *calloc(size_t <i>nelem</i> , size_t <i>elsize</i> );
Declared in	stdlib.h, alloc.h
Description	see <b>malloc</b> (in this addendum and in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> )

---

<b>chsize</b>	<i>misc</i>
---------------	-------------

---

Name	<b>chsize</b> – changes file size
Usage	int chsize(int <i>handle</i> , long <i>size</i> );
Prototype in	io.h
Description	<p><b>chsize</b> changes the size of the file associated with <i>handle</i>. It can truncate or extend the file, depending on the value of <i>size</i> compared to the file's original size.</p> <p>The mode in which you open the file must allow writing.</p> <p>If <b>chsize</b> extends the file, it will append null characters (\0). If it truncates the file, all data beyond the new end-of-file indicator is lost.</p>

<b>Return value</b>	On success, <code>chsize</code> returns 0. On failure, it returns -1 and <code>errno</code> is set to one of the following: <table> <tr> <td><code>EACCESS</code></td><td>Permission denied</td></tr> <tr> <td><code>EBADF</code></td><td>Bad file number</td></tr> </table>	<code>EACCESS</code>	Permission denied	<code>EBADF</code>	Bad file number
<code>EACCESS</code>	Permission denied				
<code>EBADF</code>	Bad file number				
<b>Portability</b>	Unique to MS-DOS.				
<b>See also</b>	<code>creat</code> , <code>fopen</code>				

---

<b>circle</b>	<i>graphics</i>
---------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>circle</code> – draws a circle
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far circle(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>, int <i>radius</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>arc</code>

---

<b>cleardevice</b>	<i>graphics</i>
--------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>cleardevice</code> – clears the graphics screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far cleardevice(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<code>cleardevice</code> erases the entire graphics screen and moves the CP (current position) to home (0,0).
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<code>clearviewport</code>

---

<b>clearviewport</b>	<i>graphics</i>
----------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>clearviewport</code> – clears the current viewport
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far clearviewport(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>



<b>Description</b>	<b>clearviewport</b> erases the viewport and moves the CP (current position) to home (0,0).
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>getviewsettings, cleardevice</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```

setviewport(30, 30, 130, 130, 0);
outtextxy(10, 10, "Hit any key to clear viewport ...");
getch();
clearviewport();
/* get a key */
/* clear viewport when key is hit */

```

---

## **closegraph** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>closegraph</b> – shuts down the graphics system
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far closegraph(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>initgraph</b>

---

## **cleol** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>cleol</b> – clears to end of line in text window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void cleol(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>cleol</b> clears all characters from the cursor position to the end of the line within the current text window without moving the cursor.
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>clrscr, delline, window</b>

---

## **clrscr** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>clrscr</b> – clears text mode window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void clrscr(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>clrscr</b> clears the current text window and places the cursor in the upper left-hand corner (at position 1,1).
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>clreol</b> , <b>delline</b> , <b>window</b>

---

## **country** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>country</b> – returns country-dependent information
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;dos.h&gt;</code> <code>struct country *country (int <i>countrycode</i>,</code> <code>                          struct country *<i>countryp</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>dos.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	The description of <b>country</b> in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> is correct except for the definition of the structure <b>country</b> ; this is the updated definition of that structure: <pre>struct country {     int co_date;                /* date format */     char co_curr[5];            /* currency symbol */     char co_thsep[2];           /* thousands separator */     char co_dseep[2];           /* decimal separator */     char co_dtsep[2];           /* date separator */     char co_tmsep[2];           /* time separator */     char co_currstyle;          /* currency style */     char co_digits;             /* # of signif. digits in currency */     char co_time;               /* time format */     long co_case;               /* case map */     char co_dasep[2];           /* data separator */     char co_fill[10];           /* filler */ };</pre>

---

## **cprintf** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>cprintf</b> – sends formatted output to the screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int cprintf(const char * <i>format</i>[, <i>argument</i>, ...] );</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>cprintf</b> has been modified so output is written to the current text window. (See the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> for further description.)
<b>Return value</b>	<b>cprintf</b> returns the number of bytes output.
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles only.

---

## **cputs** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>cputs</b> – sends a string to the screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int cputs(const char * <i>string</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>cputs</b> has been modified so output is written to the current text window. (See the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> for further description.)
<b>Return value</b>	<b>cputs</b> returns the last character printed.
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles only.

---

## **delay** *misc*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>delay</b> – suspends execution for interval (milliseconds)
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void delay(unsigned <i>milliseconds</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>dos.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	With a call to <b>delay</b> , the current program is suspended from execution for the number of milliseconds specified by the argument <i>milliseconds</i> . The exact time may vary somewhat in different operating environments.
<b>Return value</b>	None

**Portability** This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.

**See also** **sleep, sound**

**Example**

```
/* emits a 440 Hz tone for 500 milliseconds */
main()
{
    sound(440);
    delay(500);
    nosound();
}
```

---

<b>delline</b>	<i>text</i>
----------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>delline</b> – deletes line in text window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void delline(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>delline</b> deletes the line containing the cursor and moves all lines below it one line up. <b>delline</b> operates within the currently active text window.
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>clreol, insline, window</b>

---

<b>detectgraph</b>	<i>graphics</i>
--------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>detectgraph</b> – determines graphics driver and mode to use by checking the hardware
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far detectgraph(int far *graphdriver,</code> <code>int far *graphmode);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <b>initgraph</b>

<b>Name</b>	<b>div</b> – divide two integers, returning quotient and remainder
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt; div_t div(int <i>numer</i>, int <i>denom</i>);</pre>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<pre>ldiv_t ldiv(long <i>lnumer</i>, long <i>ldenom</i>);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	stdlib.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>div</b> divides two integers and returns both the quotient and the remainder as a <i>div_t</i> type. <i>numer</i> and <i>denom</i> are the numerator and denominator, respectively. The <i>div_t</i> type is a structure of integers defined (with <b>typedef</b>) in STDLIB.H as follows:</p> <pre>typedef struct {     int quot;           /* quotient */     int rem;            /* remainder */ } div_t;</pre> <p><b>ldiv</b> divides two longs and returns both the quotient and the remainder as an <i>ldiv_t</i> type. <i>lnumer</i> and <i>ldenom</i> are the numerator and denominator, respectively. The <i>ldiv_t</i> type is a structure of longs defined (with <b>typedef</b>) in STDLIB.H as follows:</p> <pre>typedef struct {     long quot;          /* quotient */     long rem;           /* remainder */ } ldiv_t;</pre>
<b>Return value</b>	Each function returns a structure whose elements are <i>quot</i> (the quotient) and <i>rem</i> (the remainder).
<b>Portability</b>	ANSI C
<b>Example</b>	

```
#include <stdlib.h>
div_t x;
ldiv_t lx;

main()
{
    x = div(10,3);
```

```

printf("10 div 3 = %d remainder %d\n", x.quot, x.rem);

lx = ldiv(100000L, 30000L);
printf("100000 div 30000 = %ld remainder %ld\n", lx.quot, lx.rem);
}

```

---

## drawpoly *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>drawpoly</b> – draws the outline of a polygon
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> void far drawpoly(int <i>numpoints</i> , int far <i>*polypoints</i> );
<b>Related functions usage</b>	void far fillpoly(int <i>numpoints</i> , int far <i>*polypoints</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>drawpoly</b> draws a polygon with <i>numpoints</i> points, using the current line style and color.</p> <p><b>fillpoly</b> draws the outline of a polygon in the current line style and color (just as <b>drawpoly</b> does), then fills the polygon using the current fill style and fill color.</p> <p><i>polypoints</i> points to a sequence of (<i>numpoints</i> * 2) integers. Each pair of integers gives the <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> coordinates of a point on the polygon.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> In order to draw a closed figure with <i>n</i> vertices, you must pass <i>n</i> + 1 coordinates to <b>drawpoly</b> where the <i>n</i>th coordinate is equal to the 0th.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	If an error occurs while filling the polygon, <b>graphresult</b> will return a value of -6.
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>getfillsettings</b> , <b>getlinesettings</b> , <b>getbkcolor</b> , <b>graphresult</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```

#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */

    int triangle[ ] = {50,100, 100,100, 150,150, 50,100};
    int rhombus[ ] = {50,10, 90,50, 50,90, 10,50};

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
}

```

```

/* draw a triangle */
drawpoly(sizeof(triangle)/(2*sizeof(int)), triangle);

/* draw and fill a rhombus */
fillpoly(sizeof(rhombus)/(2*sizeof(int)), rhombus);

closegraph();
};

```

---

## ellipse

---

## graphics

---

Name	ellipse – draws an elliptical arc
Usage	#include <graphics.h> void far ellipse(int x, int y, int stangle, int endangle, int xradius, int yradius);
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see arc

---

## exec...

---

## modified

---

Name	exec... – functions that load and run other programs
Usage	Refer to <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>
Prototypes in	process.h
Description	These functions have the same description as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> , with the following exception:

The description (given in the *Turbo C Reference Guide*) of how **exec...** functions search for files is not complete; the **exec...** functions search for *pathname* as follows.

- If no explicit extension is given (for example, *pathname* = MYPROG), the functions will search for the file as given. If that one is not found, they will add .COM and search again. If that's not found, they'll add .EXE and search one last time.
- If an explicit extension or period is given (for example, *pathname* = MYPROG.EXE), the functions will search for the file as given.
- For the **exec...** functions with a *p* suffix, if *pathname* does not contain an explicit directory, the functions

will search first the current directory, then the directories set with the DOS PATH environment variable.

---

<b>fgetpos</b>	<i>misc</i>
----------------	-------------

---

Name	<b>fgetpos</b> – gets the current file pointer
Usage	<code>#include &lt;stdio.h&gt;</code> <code>int fgetpos(FILE *stream, fpos_t *pos);</code>
Related functions usage	<code>int fsetpos(FILE *stream, const fpos_t *pos);</code>
Prototype in	stdio.h
Description	<p><b>fgetpos</b> stores the position of the file pointer associated with <i>stream</i> in the location pointed to by <i>pos</i>.</p> <p><b>fsetpos</b> sets the file pointer associated with <i>stream</i> to a new position. The new position is the value obtained by a previous call to <b>fgetpos</b> on that stream. <b>fsetpos</b> clears the end-of-file indicator on the file that <i>stream</i> points to, plus undoes any effects of <b>ungetc</b> on that file. After a call to <b>fsetpos</b>, the next operation on the file can be input or output.</p> <p>The type <i>fpos_t</i> is defined in STDIO.H as</p> <pre>typedef long fpos_t;</pre>
Return value	On success, <b>fgetpos</b> and <b>fsetpos</b> return 0. On failure, both functions return a non-zero value.
See also	<b>fseek</b>

---

<b>fillpoly</b>	<i>graphics</i>
-----------------	-----------------

---

Name	<b>fillpoly</b> – draws and fills a polygon
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far fillpoly(int numpoints, int far *polypoints);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see <b>drawpoly</b>



<b>Name</b>	<b>floodfill</b> –flood-fills a bounded region
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far floodfill(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>, int <i>border</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>floodfill</b> fills an enclosed area on bitmap devices. (<i>x,y</i>) is a “seed point” within the enclosed area to be filled. The area bounded by the color <i>border</i> is flooded with the current fill pattern and fill color. If the seed point is within an enclosed area, then the inside will be filled. If the seed is outside the enclosed area, then the exterior will be filled.</p> <p>Use <b>fillpoly</b> instead of <b>floodfill</b> whenever possible so that you can maintain code compatibility with future versions.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	If an error occurs while flooding a region, <b>graphresult</b> will return a value of <b>-7</b> .
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>drawpoly</b> , <b>getbkcolor</b> , <b>getfillsettings</b> , <b>getlinesettings</b> , <b>graphresult</b>

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */

    /* Draw a bar, then flood-fill the side and top */
    setcolor(WHITE);
    setfillstyle(HATCH_FILL, LIGHTMAGENTA);
    bar3d(10, 10, 100, 100, 10, 1);
    setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, LIGHTGREEN);
    floodfill(102, 50, WHITE);                    /* fill the side */
    floodfill(50, 8, WHITE);                       /* fill the top */

    closegraph();
};
```

---

## **fsetpos** *misc*

---

Name	<b>fsetpos</b> – positions the file pointer on a stream
Usage	#include <stdio.h> int fsetpos(FILE * <i>stream</i> , const fpos_t * <i>pos</i> );
Prototype in	stdio.h
Description	see <b>fgetpos</b>

---

## **getarccoords** *graphics*

---

Name	<b>getarccoords</b> – gets coordinates of the last call to <b>arc</b>
Usage	#include <graphics.h> void far getarccoords(struct arccoordstype far * <i>arccoords</i> );
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see <b>arc</b>

---

## **getaspectratio** *graphics*

---

Name	<b>getaspectratio</b> – returns the current graphics mode's aspect ratio
Usage	#include <graphics.h> void far getaspectratio(int far * <i>xasp</i> , int far * <i>yasp</i> );
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see <b>arc</b>

---

## **getbkcolor** *graphics*

---

Name	<b>getbkcolor</b> – returns the current background color
Usage	#include <graphics.h> int far getbkcolor(void);
Related functions	usage void far setbkcolor(int <i>color</i> );
Prototype in	graphics.h

**Description**      **getbkcolor** returns the current background color. (See following table for details.)

**setbkcolor** sets the background to the color specified by *color*. The argument *color* can be a name or a number, as listed in the following table:

---

<i>Number</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Name</i>
0	BLACK	8	DARKGRAY
1	BLUE	9	LIGHTBLUE
2	GREEN	10	LIGHTGREEN
3	CYAN	11	LIGHTCYAN
4	RED	12	LIGHTRED
5	MAGENTA	13	LIGHTMAGENTA
6	BROWN	14	YELLOW
7	LIGHTGRAY	15	WHITE

---

**Note:** These symbolic names are defined in GRAPHICS.H.

For example, if you want to set the background color to blue, you can call

```
setbkcolor(BLUE)
/* or */
setbkcolor(1)
```

On CGA and EGA systems, **setbkcolor** changes the background color by changing the first entry in the palette.

**Note:** If you use an EGA or a VGA and you change the palette colors with **setpalette** or **setallpalette**, the defined symbolic constants might not give you the correct color.

**Return value**      **getbkcolor** returns the current background color.

**setbkcolor** returns nothing.

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**          **getpalette**, **initgraph**

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
```

```

int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
int svcolor;

initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */

svcolor = getbkcolor();                        /* save current bk color */
setbkcolor(svcolor ^ 1);                      /* change bk color */
delay(5000);                                  /* wait 5 seconds */
setbkcolor(svcolor);                          /* restore old bk color */

closegraph();
};

```

---

## getche *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getche</b> – gets character from keyboard, echoes to screen
<b>Usage</b>	int getche(void);
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>getche</b> has been modified so input is echoed to the current text window. (See the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> for further description.)

---

## getcolor *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getcolor</b> – returns the current drawing color
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> int far getcolor(void);
<b>Related functions</b>	void far setcolor(int <i>color</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>getcolor</b> returns the current drawing color.</p> <p><b>setcolor</b> sets the current drawing color to <i>color</i>, which can range from 0 to <code>getmaxcolor()</code>.</p> <p>The drawing color is the value to which pixels are set when lines, etc., are drawn. For example, in CGAC0 mode, the palette contains four colors: the background color, light green, light red, and yellow. In this mode, if <code>getcolor()</code> returns 1, the current drawing color is light green; similarly, <code>setcolor(3)</code> selects a drawing color of yellow.</p>

**Return value**      **getcolor** returns the current drawing color. **setcolor** returns nothing.

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**          **getpalette**, **getmaxcolor**

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    int svcolor;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
    svcolor = getcolor();                          /* save current drawing color */
    setcolor(3);                                  /* set drawing color to color stored in palette entry #3 */
    circle(100, 100, 5);                          /* small colored circle */
    setcolor(svcolor);                            /* restore old drawing color */

    closegraph();
};
```

---

## **getfillpattern** *graphics*

---

**Name**              **getfillpattern** – copies a user-defined fill pattern into memory

**Usage**             `#include <graphics.h>`  
                      `void far getfillpattern(char far *upattern);`

**Related functions usage**   `void far setfillpattern(char far *upattern, int color);`

**Prototype in**      `graphics.h`

**Description**      **getfillpattern** copies the user-defined fill pattern, as set by **setfillpattern**, into the 8-byte area pointed to by *upattern*.

**setfillpattern** is like **setfillstyle**, except that you use it to set a user-defined 8x8 pattern rather than a predefined pattern.

*upattern* is a pointer to a sequence of 8 bytes, with each byte corresponding to 8 pixels in the pattern. Whenever a bit in a pattern byte is set to 1, the corresponding pixel

will be plotted. For example, the following user-defined fill pattern represents a checkerboard:

```
char checkboard[8] = {
    0xAA, 0x55, 0xAA, 0x55, 0xAA, 0x55, 0xAA, 0x55
};
```

**Return value**      None

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0.

**See also**          **getfillsettings**

---

## getfillsettings *graphics*

---

**Name**              **getfillsettings** – gets information about current fill pattern and color

**Usage**             `#include <graphics.h>`  
                      `void far getfillsettings(struct fillsettingstype`  
    `far *fillinfo);`

**Related functions usage**   `void far setfillstyle(int pattern, int color);`

**Prototype in**        `graphics.h`

**Description**        The functions **bar**, **bar3d**, **fillpoly**, **floodfill**, and **pieslice** all fill an area with the current fill pattern in the current fill color. There are 11 predefined fill pattern styles (such as solid, cross-hatch, dotted, etc.). Symbolic names for the predefined patterns are provided by the enumeration *fill\_patterns* in GRAPHICS.H (see the following table). In addition, you can define your own fill pattern.

**getfillsettings** fills in the **fillsettingstype** structure pointed to by *fillinfo* with information about the current fill pattern and fill color. The **fillsettingstype** structure is defined in GRAPHICS.H as follows:

```
struct fillsettingstype {
    int pattern;           /* current fill pattern */
    int color;            /* current fill color */
};
```

If *pattern* = 12 (USER\_FILL), then a user-defined fill pattern is being used; otherwise, *pattern* gives the number of a predefined pattern.

**setfillstyle** sets the current fill pattern and fill color. To set a user-defined fill pattern, you should *not* give a *pattern* of 12 (USER\_FILL) to setfillstyle; instead, call **setfillpattern**.

The enumeration *fill\_patterns*, defined in GRAPHICS.H, gives names for the predefined fill patterns, plus an indicator for a user-defined pattern:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
EMPTY_FILL	0	Fill with background color
SOLID_FILL	1	Solid fill
LINE_FILL	2	Fill with —
LTSLASH_FILL	3	Fill with ///
SLASH_FILL	4	Fill with ///, thick lines
BKSLASH_FILL	5	Fill with \\, thick lines
LTBKSLASH_FILL	6	Fill with \\
HATCH_FILL	7	Light hatch fill
XHATCH_FILL	8	Heavy cross hatch fill
INTERLEAVE_FILL	9	Interleaving line fill
WIDEDOT_FILL	10	Widely spaced dot fill
CLOSEDOT_FILL	11	Closely spaced dot fill
USER_FILL	12	User-defined fill pattern

All but EMPTY\_FILL fill with the current fill color; EMPTY\_FILL uses the current background color.

**Return value** None

If invalid input is passed to **setfillstyle**, **graphresult** will return -11 and the current fill pattern and fill color will remain unchanged.

**Portability** Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also** **arc**, **bar**, **fillpoly**, **floodfill**, **getfillpattern**

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    struct fillsettingstype save;
    char savepattern[8];
    char gray50[] = { 0xaa, 0x55, 0xaa, 0x55, 0xaa, 0x55, 0xaa, 0x55 };
```

```

initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");           /* initialize graphics */
getfillsettings(&save);                           /* retrieve current settings */
if (save.pattern == USER_FILL)                    /* if user-defined pattern */
    getfillpattern(savepattern);                   /* then save user fill pattern */

setfillstyle(SLASH_FILL, BLUE);                   /* change fill style */
bar( 0, 0, 100, 100);                             /* draw slash-filled blue bar */

setfillpattern(gray50, YELLOW);                   /* custom fill pattern */
bar(100, 100, 200, 200);                          /* draw customized yellow bar */

if (save.pattern == USER_FILL)                    /* if user-defined pattern */
    setfillpattern(savepattern, save.color);       /* then restore user fill
                                                    pattern */
else
    setfillstyle(save.pattern, save.color);        /* restore old style */
closegraph();
};

```

---

## getgraphmode graphics

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getgraphmode</b> – returns the current graphics mode.
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>int far getgraphmode(void);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>void far setgraphmode(int <i>mode</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>getgraphmode</b> returns the current graphics mode set by <b>initgraph</b> or <b>setgraphmode</b> .

**setgraphmode** selects a graphics mode different than the default one set by **initgraph**. *mode* must be a valid mode for the current device driver. **setgraphmode** clears the screen and resets all graphics settings to their defaults (CP, palette, color, viewport, and so on). You can use **setgraphmode** in conjunction with **restorecrtmode** to switch back and forth between text and graphics modes.

Your program must make a successful call to **initgraph** before calling either of these functions.

The enumeration *graphics\_mode*, defined in GRAPHICS.H, gives names for the predefined graphics modes. For a table listing these enumeration values, refer to the description for **initgraph**.



<b>Return value</b>	None
	If you give <b>setgraphmode</b> an invalid mode for the current device driver, <b>graphresult</b> will return a value of -10.
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>getmoderange</b> , <b>initgraph</b> , <b>restorecrtmode</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
int cmode;

cmode = getgraphmode();           /* save current mode */
restorecrtmode();                 /* switch to text */
printf("Now in text mode - press any key to go back to graphics ...");
getch();
setgraphmode(cmode);             /* back to graphics */
```

---

<b>getimage</b>	<i>graphics</i>
-----------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getimage</b> – saves a bit image of the specified region into memory.
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <b>void far</b> <b>getimage</b> (int <i>left</i> , int <i>top</i> , int <i>right</i> , int <i>bottom</i> , <b>void far</b> * <i>bitmap</i> );
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<b>unsigned far</b> <b>imagesize</b> (int <i>left</i> , int <i>top</i> , int <i>right</i> , int <i>bottom</i> );  <b>void far</b> <b>putimage</b> (int <i>left</i> , int <i>top</i> , <b>void far</b> * <i>bitmap</i> , int <i>op</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	These three functions are used for copying an image from the screen to memory, then putting it back on the screen.

**getimage** saves a bit image of a rectangular region on the screen to memory. *left*, *top*, *right*, and *bottom* define the on-screen rectangle. *bitmap* points to the area in memory where the bit image will be stored. The first two words of this area are used for the width and height of the rectangle; the remainder holds the image itself.

**imagesize** determines the number of bytes necessary for **getimage** to save the specified rectangle. The image size returned includes space for the width and height of the rectangle.

**putimage** puts the bit image previously saved with **getimage** back onto the screen, with the upper-left corner of the image placed at *(left,top)*. *bitmap* points to the area in memory where the source image is stored.

The *op* parameter to **putimage** specifies a combination operator that controls how the color for each destination pixel on screen is computed, based on the pixel already on screen and the corresponding source pixel in memory.

The enumeration *putimage\_ops*, defined in GRAPHICS.H, gives names to these operators:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
COPY_PUT	0	copy
XOR_PUT	1	exclusive-or
OR_PUT	2	inclusive-or
AND_PUT	3	and
NOT_PUT	4	copy the inverse of the source

In words, COPY\_PUT will copy the source bitmap image onto the screen, XOR\_PUT will XOR the source image with that already on screen, OR\_PUT will OR the source image with that on screen, etc.

**Return value** **imagesize** returns the size of the required memory area. If the size required for the selected image is greater than or equal to 64K bytes, **imagesize** returns 0xFFFF (-1).

**getimage** and **putimage** return nothing.

**Portability** Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
```

```

int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
void * buffer;
unsigned size;

initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
size=imagesize(0,0,20,10);
buffer=malloc (size);                         /*get memory for image */
getimage(0,0,20,10,buffer);                  /*save bits */

/* ... */

putimage(0,0,buffer,COPY_PUT);                /*restore bits */
free(buffer);                                /*free buffer*/

closegraph();
}

```

---

## getlinesettings *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getlinesettings</b> – gets the current line style, pattern, and thickness
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far getlinesettings(struct linesettingstype                         far *lineinfo);</pre>
<b>Related functions</b>	<pre>void far setlinestyle(int linestyle,                     unsigned upattern, int thickness);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>getlinesettings</b> fills a <b>linesettingstype</b> structure pointed to by <i>lineinfo</i> with information about the current line style, pattern, and thickness.</p> <p>You can change these values by calling <b>setlinestyle</b>; this function sets the style for all lines drawn by <b>line</b>, <b>lineto</b>, <b>rectangle</b>, <b>drawpoly</b>, <b>arc</b>, <b>circle</b>, <b>ellipse</b>, <b>pieslice</b>, etc.</p> <p>The <b>linesettingstype</b> structure is defined in GRAPHICS.H as follows:</p> <pre>struct linesettingstype {     int linestyle;     unsigned upattern;     int thickness; };</pre> <p><i>linestyle</i> specifies in which of several styles subsequent lines will be drawn (such as solid, dotted, centered,</p>

dashed). The enumeration *line\_styles*, defined in GRAPHICS.H, gives names to these operators:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
SOLID_LINE	0	Solid line
DOTTED_LINE	1	Dotted line
CENTER_LINE	2	Centered line
DASHED_LINE	3	Dashed line
USERBIT_LINE	4	User-defined line style

*thickness* specifies whether the width of subsequent lines drawn will be normal or thick.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
NORM_WIDTH	1	1 pixel wide
THICK_WIDTH	3	3 pixels wide

*upattern* is a 16-bit pattern that applies only if *linestyle* is USERBIT\_LINE (4). In that case, whenever a bit in the pattern word is 1, the corresponding pixel in the line is drawn in the current drawing color. For example, a solid line corresponds to a *upattern* of 0xFFFF (all pixels drawn), while a dashed line can correspond to a *upattern* of 0x3333 or 0x0F0F. If the *linestyle* parameter to *setlinestyle* is not USERBIT\_LINE (!= 4), the *upattern* parameter must still be supplied but it is ignored.

**Return value**      None

If invalid input is passed to *setlinestyle*, *graphresult* will return -11 and the current line style remains unchanged.

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0  
Example

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    struct linesettingstype saveline;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
}
```

```

getlinesettings(&saveline);           /* save current line style */
setlinestyle(SOLID_LINE, 0, THICK_WIDTH);
rectangle(10, 10, 17, 15);           /* draw a little thick box */
setlinestyle(saveline.linestyle,      /* restore old line settings */
             saveline.pattern,
             saveline.thickness);

closegraph();
};

```

---

## **getmaxcolor** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getmaxcolor</b> – returns maximum color value
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> int far getmaxcolor(void);
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>getmaxcolor</b> returns the highest valid pixel value (palette size – 1) for the current graphics driver and mode.
<b>Return value</b>	<b>getmaxcolor</b> returns the highest available color.
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	getbkcolor, getpalette

---

## **getmaxx** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getmaxx</b> – returns maximum <i>x</i> screen coordinate
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> int far getmaxx(void);
<b>Related functions</b>	<b>usage</b> int far getmaxy(void);
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>getmaxx</b> returns the maximum (screen-relative) <i>x</i> value for the current graphics driver and mode.</p> <p><b>getmaxy</b> returns the maximum (screen-relative) <i>y</i> value for the current graphics driver and mode.</p> <p>For example, on a CGA in 320×200 mode, <b>getmaxx</b> returns 319, and <b>getmaxy</b> returns 199. <b>getmaxx</b> and</p>

<b>Return value</b>	<b>getmaxx</b> returns the maximum <i>x</i> screen coordinate; <b>getmaxy</b> returns the maximum <i>y</i> screen coordinate.
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>getx</b>
<b>Example</b>	

## Example

```
int lo, hi;

getmoderange(CGA, &lo, &hi);
printf("CGA supports modes %d through %d\n", lo, hi);
```

---

## getpalette

## graphics

---

**Name** **getpalette** – returns information about the current palette

**Usage** `#include <graphics.h>`  
`void far getpalette(struct palettetype far *palette);`

**Related functions usage** `void far setallpalette(struct palettetype far *palette);`  
`void far setpalette(int index, int actual_color);`

**Prototype in** graphics.h

**Description** **getpalette** fills the **palettetype** structure pointed to by *palette* with information about the current palette's size and colors.

You can partially (or completely) change the colors in the EGA/VGA palette with **setpalette** (or **setallpalette**). On a CGA, you can only change the first entry in the palette (*index* = 0, the background color) with a call to **setpalette**.

**setallpalette** sets the current palette to the values given in the **palettetype** structure pointed to by *palette*.

**setpalette** changes the *index* entry in the palette to *actual\_color*. For example, `setpalette(0, 5)` changes the first color in the current palette (the background color) to actual color number 5. If *size* is the number of entries in the current palette, *index* can range between 0 and (*size*-1).

The **palettetype** structure (used by **getpalette** and **setallpalette**) and the **MAXCOLORS** constant are defined in **GRAPHICS.H** as follows:

```
#define MAXCOLORS 15

struct palettetype {
    unsigned char size;
    signed char colors[MAXCOLORS + 1];
};
```

*size* gives the number of colors in the palette for the current graphics driver in the current mode.

*colors* is an array of *size* bytes containing the actual raw color numbers for each entry in the palette. In the **setallpalette** routine, if an element of *colors* is -1, the palette color for that entry is not changed.

The *actual\_color* parameter passed to **setpalette**, as well as the elements in the *colors* array used by **setallpalette**, can be represented by symbolic constants defined in GRAPHICS.H.

---

ACTUAL COLOR TABLE			
CGA		EGA/VGA	
Name .....	Value	Name .....	Value
<hr/>			
BLACK.....	0	EGA_BLACK.....	0
BLUE.....	1	EGA_BLUE.....	1
GREEN .....	2	EGA_GREEN.....	2
CYAN.....	3	EGA_CYAN.....	3
RED .....	4	EGA_RED .....	4
MAGENTA .....	5	EGA_MAGENTA .....	5
BROWN.....	6	EGA_BROWN.....	20
LIGHTGRAY.....	7	EGA_LIGHTGRAY.....	7
DARKGRAY.....	8	EGA_DARKGRAY.....	56
LIGHTBLUE .....	9	EGA_LIGHTBLUE .....	57
LIGHTGREEN.....	10	EGA_LIGHTGREEN.....	58
LIGHTCYAN .....	11	EGA_LIGHTCYAN .....	59
LIGHTRED .....	12	EGA_LIGHTRED.....	60
LIGHTMAGENTA...	13	EGA_LIGHTMAGENTA...	61
YELLOW .....	14	EGA_YELLOW .....	62
WHITE.....	15	EGA_WHITE.....	63

---

Note that valid colors depend on the current graphics driver and current graphics mode.

Changes made to the palette are seen immediately on the screen. Each time a palette color is changed, all occurrences of that color on the screen will change to the new color value.

**Return value**      None

If invalid input is passed to **setpalette**, **graphresult** will return -11 and the current palette remains unchanged.



**Portability**

A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also****getbkcolor, getcolor****Example**

```

#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    struct palettetype palette;
    int color;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
    getpalette(&palette);                          /* get current palette */
    for(color=0; color<palette.size; color++)
    {
        setfillstyle(SOLID_FILL, color);          /* draw some colorful bars */
        bar(20*(color-1), 0, 20*color, 20);
    };

    if (palette.size > 1)                          /* only if more than 1 color */
    {
        do                                          /* switch colors randomly */
            setpalette(random(palette.size), random(palette.size));
        while(!kbhit());                          /* until a key is hit */
        getch();                                  /* discard keystroke */
    };

    setallpalette(&palette);                      /* restore original palette */
    closegraph();
};

```

---

**getpixel***graphics*

---

**Name****getpixel** – gets the color of a specified pixel**Usage**

```

#include <graphics.h>
int far getpixel(int x, int y);

```

**Related****functions usage**void far putpixel(int x, int y, int *pixelcolor*);**Prototype in**

graphics.h

**Description****getpixel** gets the color of the pixel located at (x,y).**putpixel** plots a point in the color defined by *pixelcolor* at (x,y).

<b>Return value</b>	<code>getpixel</code> returns the color of the given pixel; <code>putpixel</code> returns nothing.
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<code>getimage</code>
<b>Example</b>	

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    int i, color, max;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
    max = getmaxcolor() + 1;

    /* change color of pixels in a diagonal line */
    for (i=1; i<200; i++) {
        color = getpixel(i,i);
        putpixel(i, i, (color ^ i) % max);
    }
    closegraph();
}
```

---

<b>gettext</b>	<i>text</i>
----------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>gettext</code> – copies text from text-mode screen to memory
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int gettext(int left, int top, int right, int bottom, void *destin);</code>
<b>Related functions</b>	<code>int puttext(int left, int top, int right, int bottom, void *source, );</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><code>gettext</code> stores the contents of an on-screen rectangle defined by <i>left</i>, <i>top</i>, <i>right</i>, and <i>bottom</i>, into the area of memory pointed to by <i>destin</i>.</p> <p><code>puttext</code> writes the contents of the memory area pointed to by <i>source</i> out to the on-screen rectangle defined by <i>left</i>, <i>top</i>, <i>right</i>, and <i>bottom</i>.</p> <p>All coordinates are absolute screen coordinates, not window-relative.</p>

**gettext** reads the contents of the rectangle into memory sequentially from left to right and top to bottom. **puttext** places the contents of a memory into the defined rectangle in the same manner.

Each position on screen takes 2 bytes of memory: The first byte is the character in the cell, and the second is the cell's video attribute. The space required for a rectangle *w* columns wide by *h* rows high is defined as:

$$\text{bytes} = (h \text{ rows}) \times (w \text{ columns}) \times 2$$

<b>Return value</b>	These functions return 1 if the operation succeeded; they return 0 if it failed (for example, if you gave coordinates outside the range of the current screen mode).
<b>Portability</b>	These text mode functions work on IBM PCs and BIOS-compatible systems, only.
<b>See also</b>	<b>movetext</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
char buf[20*10*2];
gettext(0,0,20,10,buf);                               /* save rectangle */
/* ... */
puttext(0,0,buf);                                       /* restore screen */
```

---

**gettextinfo**

*text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>gettextinfo</b> – gets text mode video information
<b>Usage</b>	#include <conio.h> void gettextinfo(struct text_info *inforec);
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>gettextinfo</b> fills in the <b>text_info</b> structure pointed to by <i>inforec</i> with the current text video information.</p> <p>The <b>text_info</b> structure is defined in CONIO.H as follows:</p> <pre>struct text_info {     unsigned char winleft;      /* left window coordinate */     unsigned char wintop;      /* top window coordinate */     unsigned char winright;    /* right window coordinate */     unsigned char winbottom;   /* bottom window coordinate */ }</pre>

```

        unsigned char attribute;           /* text attribute */
        unsigned char normattr;           /* normal attribute */
        unsigned char currmode;           /* BW40, BW80, C40, or C80 */
        unsigned char screenheight;       /* bottom - top */
        unsigned char screenwidth;        /* right - left */
        unsigned char curx;               /* x coordinate in current window*/
        unsigned char cury;               /* y coordinate in current window*/
    };

```

**Return value**      None. The results are returned in the structure pointed to by *infoec*.

**Portability**      This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only.

**See also**            **textattr, textbackground, textcolor, textmode, wherex, wherey, window**

### Example

```

#include <conio.h>
struct text_info initial_info;
main()
{
    gettextinfo(&initial_info);
    /* ... */
    /* restore text mode to original value */
    textmode(initial_info.currmode);
}

```

---

## gettextsettings *graphics*

---

**Name**                **gettextsettings** – returns information about the current text settings

**Usage**              **#include <graphics.h>**  
                      **void far gettextsettings(struct textsettingstype**  
    **far \*textinfo);**

**Related**  
**functions usage**    **void far settextjustify(int horiz, int vert);**  
                      **void far settextstyle(int font, int direction, int charsize);**

**Prototype in**        **graphics.h**

**Description**        **gettextsettings** fills the **textsettingstype** structure pointed to by *textinfo* with information about the current

text font, direction, size, and justification (as set by `settextstyle` and `settextjustify`).

The `textsettingstype` structure used by `gettextsettings` is defined in `GRAPHICS.H` as follows:

```
struct textsettingstype {
    int font;
    int direction;
    int charsize;
    int horiz;
    int vert;
};
```

Text output after a call to `settextjustify` will be justified around the CP horizontally and vertically as specified. The default justification settings are `LEFT_TEXT` (for horizontal) and `TOP_TEXT` (for vertical). The enumeration `text_just` in `GRAPHICS.H` provides names for the *horiz* and *vert* settings passed to `settextjustify`:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
<code>LEFT_TEXT</code>	0	horiz
<code>CENTER_TEXT</code>	1	horiz and vert
<code>RIGHT_TEXT</code>	2	horiz
<code>BOTTOM_TEXT</code>	0	vert
<code>TOP_TEXT</code>	2	vert

If *horiz* is equal to `LEFT_TEXT` and *direction* = `HORIZ_DIR`, the CP's *x* component (CPX) is advanced after a call to `outtext(string)` by `textwidth(string)`.

`settextstyle` sets the text font, the direction in which text is displayed, and the size of the characters. A call to `settextstyle` affects all text output by `outtext` and `outtextxy`.

The parameters *font*, *direction*, and *charsize* passed to `settextstyle` are described in the following:

*font*: one 8×8 bit-mapped font and several "stroked" fonts are available. The 8×8 bit-mapped font is the default. The enumeration `font_names`, defined in `GRAPHICS.H`, provides names for these different font settings (see following table).

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
DEFAULT_FONT	0	8x8 bit-mapped font
TRIPLEX_FONT	1	Stroked triplex font
SMALL_FONT	2	Stroked small font
SANSSERIF_FONT	3	Stroked sans-serif font
GOTHIC_FONT	4	Stroked gothic font

The default bit-mapped font is built into the graphics system. Stroked fonts are stored in \*.CHR disk files, and only one at a time is kept in memory. Therefore, when you select a stroked font (different from the last selected stroked font), the corresponding \*.CHR file must be loaded from disk. To avoid this loading when several stroked fonts are used, you can link font files into your program. You do this by converting them into object files with the BGIOBJ utility, then registering them through **registerbgifont**, as described in Appendix D of this addendum.

*direction*: font directions supported are horizontal text (left to right) and vertical text (rotated 90 degrees counterclockwise). The default direction is **HORIZ\_DIR**.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Value</i>	<i>Description</i>
HORIZ_DIR	0	left to right
VERT_DIR	1	bottom to top

*charsize*: the size of each character can be magnified using the *charsize* factor. If *charsize* is non-zero, it can affect bit-mapped or stroked characters. If *charsize* = 0, only stroked characters are affected.

- ▣ If *charsize* = 1, **outtext** and **outtextxy** will display characters from the 8x8 bit-mapped font in an 8x8 pixel rectangle on the screen.
- ▣ If *charsize* = 2, these output functions will display characters from the 8x8 bit-mapped font in a 16x16 pixel rectangle; and so on (up to a limit of 10 times the normal size).

- When *charsize* = 0, the output functions **outtext** and **outtextxy** magnify the stroked font text using either the default character magnification factor (4), or the user-defined character size given by **setusercharsize**.

Always use **textheight** and **textwidth** to determine the actual dimensions of the text.

**Return value**      None

Since stroked fonts can be stored on disk, errors can occur when trying to load them. If an error occurs, **graphresult** will return one of the following values:

- 8     Font file not found.
- 9     Not enough memory to load the font selected.
- 11    (general error)
- 12    Graphics I/O error
- 13    Invalid font file
- 14    Invalid font number

If invalid input is passed to **settextjustify**, **graphresult** will return -11 and the current text justification remains unchanged.

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**           **graphresult**, **outtext**, **registerbgifont**, **textheight**

### Example

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    struct textsettingstype oldtext;

    initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");      /* initialize graphics */
    gettextsettings(&oldtext);                    /* get current settings */

    /* switch to horizontal, upper-left-justified, */
    /* gothic font, scaled by a factor of 5 */
    settextjustify(LEFT_TEXT, TOP_TEXT);
    settextstyle(GOTHIC_FONT, HORIZ_DIR, 5);
    outtext("Gothic Text");

    /* restore previous settings */
    settextjustify(oldtext.horiz, oldtext.vert);
    settextstyle(oldtext.font, oldtext.direction, oldtext.charsize);
}
```

```

    closegraph();
}

```

---

## getviewsettings

---

*graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>getviewsettings</b> – returns information about the current viewport
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far getviewsettings(struct viewporttype                         far *viewport);</pre>
<b>Related functions</b>	<pre>void far setviewport(int left, int top, int right, int bottom,                     int clipflag);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>getviewsettings</b> fills the <b>viewporttype</b> structure pointed to by <i>viewport</i> with information about the current viewport.</p> <p><b>setviewport</b> establishes a new viewport for graphics output.</p> <p>The viewport's corners are given in absolute screen coordinates by (<i>left,top</i>) and (<i>right,bottom</i>). The current position (CP) is moved to viewport (0,0).</p> <p>The parameter <i>clipflag</i> determines whether drawings are clipped (truncated) at the current viewport boundaries. If <i>clipflag</i> is non-zero when your program calls <b>setviewport</b>, all drawings will be clipped to the current viewport.</p> <p>The <b>viewporttype</b> structure used by <b>getviewport</b> is defined in GRAPHICS.H as follows:</p> <pre>struct viewporttype {     int left, top, right, bottom;     int clipflag; };</pre> <p>Note: <b>initgraph</b> and <b>setgraphmode</b> reset the viewport to the entire graphics screen.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None



If invalid input is passed to **setviewport**, **graphresult** will return -11 and the current view settings remain unchanged.

**Portability** A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also** **clearviewport**

**Example**

```
struct viewporttype view;

getviewsettings(&view);           /* get current setting */
if (!view.clip)                   /* if clipping not on */
    setviewport(view.left, view.top,
                view.right, view.bottom, 1);           /* turn it on */
```

---

## **getx** *graphics*

---

**Name** **getx** – returns the current position's *x* coordinate

**Usage** `#include <graphics.h>`  
`int far getx(void);`

**Related functions usage** `int far gety(void);`

**Prototype in** `graphics.h`

**Description** **getx** returns the current position's *x* coordinate.  
**gety** returns the current position's *y* coordinate.

**Return value** **getx** returns the CP's *x* coordinate; **gety** returns the CP's *y* coordinate. (The values are viewport-relative.)

**Portability** Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also** **getviewsettings**, **initgraph**, **moveto**

**Example**

```
int oldx, oldy;

/* save current position */
oldx = getx();
oldy = gety();

circle(100, 100, 2);           /* draw a blob at [100,100] */
moveto(99,100);
linere1(2,0);
moveto(oldx, oldy);           /* back to the old position */
```

---

## **gety** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>gety</b> – returns the current position's <i>y</i> coordinate
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>int far gety(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>getx</b>

---

## **gotoxy** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>gotoxy</b> – positions cursor in text window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void gotoxy(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>gotoxy</b> moves the cursor to the given position in the current text window. If the coordinates are in any way invalid, the call to <b>gotoxy</b> is ignored. An example of this is a call to <code>gotoxy(40, 30)</code> when (35,25) is the bottom right position in the window.</p> <p>The two functions <b>wherex</b> and <b>wherey</b> will return the current <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> positions of the cursor, respectively.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>wherex</b> , <b>wherey</b> , <b>window</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
gotoxy(10,20);           /* position cursor at column 10, row 20 */
```

---

## **graphdefaults** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>graphdefaults</b> – resets all graphics settings to their defaults
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far graphdefaults(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h

<b>Description</b>	<p><b>graphdefaults</b> resets all graphics settings to their defaults. It:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ sets the viewport to the entire screen</li> <li>■ moves the current position to (0,0)</li> <li>■ sets the default palette colors, background color, and drawing color</li> <li>■ sets the default fill style and pattern</li> <li>■ sets the default text font and justification</li> </ul>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>initgraph</b> , <b>getgraphmode</b>

---

<b>grapherrormsg</b>	<i>graphics</i>
----------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>grapherrormsg</b> – returns an error message string
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; char far *far grapherrormsg(int <i>errorcode</i>);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>graphresult</b>

---

<b>_graphfreemem</b>	<i>graphics</i>
----------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>_graphfreemem</b> – user-modifiable graph memory deallocation
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far _graphfreemem(void far *<i>ptr</i>, unsigned <i>size</i>);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>_graphgetmem</b>

---

## **\_graphgetmem** *graphics*

---

**Name** `_graphgetmem` – user-modifiable graphics memory allocation

**Usage** `#include <graphics.h>`  
`void far * far _graphgetmem(unsigned size);`

**Related functions usage** `void far _graphfreemem(void far *ptr, unsigned size);`

**Prototype in** `graphics.h`

**Description** The graphics library calls `_graphgetmem` to allocate memory for internal buffers, graphics drivers, and character sets. You can choose to control the memory management of the graphics library by defining your own version of `_graphgetmem` (you must declare it exactly as shown in the Usage). The default version of this routine merely calls `malloc`.

The graphics library calls `_graphfreemem` to release memory previously allocated through `_graphgetmem`. You can choose to control the graphics library memory management by defining your own version of `_graphfreemem` (you must declare it exactly as shown in the Usage). The default version of this routine merely calls `free`.

**Return value** None

**Portability** Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0.

### **Example**

```
/* example of user-defined graph management routines */

#include <graphics.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <conio.h>
#include <process.h>
#include <alloc.h>

main()
{
    int errorcode;
    int graphdriver;
    int graphmode;

    graphdriver = DETECT;
```

```

initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "c:\\");
errorcode = graphresult();
if (errorcode != grOk)
{
    printf("graphics error: %s\n",grapherrormsg(errorcode));
    exit(1);
};

settextstyle(GOTHIC_FONT, HORIZ_DIR, 4);
outtextxy( 100, 100, "BGI TEST");

closegraph();
}

void far * far _graphgetmem(unsigned size)
{
    printf("_graphgetmem called [size=%d] -- hit any key",size);
    getch(); printf("\n");
    return(farmalloc(size));                /* use "far" heap */
}

void far _graphfreemem(void far *ptr, unsigned size)
{
    printf("_graphfreemem called [size=%d] -- hit any key",size);
    getch(); printf("\n");
    farfree(ptr);                          /* "size" not used */
}

```

---

## graphresult

---

## graphics

---

**Name** **graphresult** – returns an error code for the last unsuccessful graphics operation

**Usage** `#include <graphics.h>`  
`int far graphresult(void);`

**Related**

**functions usage** `char far *far grapherrormsg(int errorcode);`

**Prototype in** `graphics.h`

**Description** **graphresult** returns the error code for the last graphics operation that reported an error.

**grapherrormsg** returns a pointer to a string associated with *errorcode*, the error code returned by **graphresult**. This makes it easy for your program to display a descriptive error message, such as "Device driver not found (CGA.BGI)" instead of "error code -3", which makes your programs easier for other humans to follow.

The following table lists the error codes returned by **graphresult**, the *graphics\_errors* type constant associated with the error codes, and the corresponding error messages:

error code	<i>graphics_errors</i> constant	corresponding error message string
0	grOk	No error
-1	grNoInitGraph	(BGI) graphics not installed (use <b>initgraph</b> )
-2	grNotDetected	Graphics hardware not detected
-3	grFileNotFound	Device driver file not found
-4	grInvalidDriver	Invalid device driver file
-5	grNoLoadMem	Not enough memory to load driver
-6	grNoScanMem	Out of memory in scan fill
-7	grNoFloodMem	Out of memory in flood fill
-8	grFontNotFound	Font file not found
-9	grNoFontMem	Not enough memory to load font
-10	grInvalidMode	Invalid graphics mode for selected driver
-11	grError	Graphics error
-12	grIOerror	Graphics I/O error
-13	grInvalidFont	Invalid font file
-14	grInvalidFontNum	Invalid font number
-15	grInvalidDeviceNum	Invalid device number

Note that **graphresult** is reset to 0 after it has been called. Therefore, you should store the value of **graphresult** into a temporary variable and then test it.

**Return value** **graphresult** will return the current graphics error number, an integer in the range -15 to 0; **grapherrormsg** returns a pointer to a string associated with the value returned by **graphresult**.

**Portability** A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also** **initgraph**

---

## highvideo *text*

---

Name	<b>highvideo</b> – selects high intensity text characters
Usage	<code>void highvideo(void);</code>
Related functions usage	<code>void lowvideo(void);</code> <code>void normvideo(void);</code>
Prototype in	<code>conio.h</code>
Description	<p><b>highvideo</b> selects high intensity characters by setting the high intensity bit of the currently selected foreground color.</p> <p><b>normvideo</b> selects normal characters by returning the text attribute (foreground and background) to the value it had when the program started.</p> <p><b>lowvideo</b> selects low intensity characters by clearing the high intensity bit of the currently selected foreground color.</p> <p>These functions do not affect any characters currently on the screen; they only affect those displayed using direct console output functions (such as <code>cprintf</code>) <i>after</i> these functions are called.</p>
Return value	None
Portability	These functions work with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; corresponding functions exist in Turbo Pascal.
See also	<code>cprintf</code> , <code>cputs</code> , <code>gettextinfo</code> , <code>putch</code> , <code>textattr</code>

---

## imagesize *graphics*

---

Name	<b>imagesize</b> – returns the number of bytes required to store a bit image
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>unsigned far imagesize(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>,</code> <code>                          int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>);</code>
Prototype in	<code>graphics.h</code>
Description	see <code>getimage</code>

---

## **initgraph** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>initgraph</b> – initializes the graphics system
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far initgraph(int far *graphdriver,                   int far *graphmode,                   char far *pathtodriver);</pre>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<pre>void far detectgraph(int far *graphdriver,                     int far *graphmode); void far closegraph(void);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>initgraph</b> initializes the graphics system by loading a graphics driver from disk (or validating a registered driver), and putting the system into graphics mode.</p> <p><b>detectgraph</b> detects your system's graphics adapter and chooses the mode that provides the highest resolution for that adapter. If no graphics hardware was detected, the <i>*graphdriver</i> parameter is set to -2 and <b>graphresult</b> will also return -2.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> The main reason to call <b>detectgraph</b> directly is to override the graphics mode that <b>detectgraph</b> recommends to <b>initgraph</b>.</p> <p><b>closegraph</b> deallocates all memory allocated by the graphics system, then restores the screen to the mode it was in before you called <b>initgraph</b>. (The graphics system deallocates memory, such as the drivers, fonts, and an internal buffer, through a call to <b>_graphfreemem</b>.)</p> <p>To start the graphics system, you first call the <b>initgraph</b> function. <b>initgraph</b> loads the graphics driver and puts the system into graphics mode. You can tell <b>initgraph</b> to use a particular graphics driver and mode, or to auto detect the attached video adapter at run time and pick the corresponding driver. If you tell <b>initgraph</b> to auto detect, it calls <b>detectgraph</b> to select a graphics driver and mode. <b>initgraph</b> also resets all graphics settings to their defaults (current position, palette, color, viewport, etc.) and resets <b>graphresult</b> to 0.</p>



Normally, `initgraph` loads a graphics driver by allocating memory for the driver (through `_graphgetmem`), then loading the appropriate .BGI file from disk. As an alternative to this dynamic loading scheme, you can link a graphics driver file (or several of them) directly into your executable program file. See *Appendix D* in this addendum for more information.

`pathtodriver` specifies the directory path where `initgraph` will look for the graphics drivers. `initgraph` first looks in the path specified in `pathtodriver`, then (if they're not there) in the current directory. Accordingly, if `pathtodriver` is NULL, the driver files (\*.BGI) must be in the current directory. This is also the path `settextstyle` will search for the stroked character font (\*.CHR) files.

`*graphdriver` is an integer that specifies the graphics driver to be used. You can give it a value using a constant of the `graphics_drivers` enumeration type, defined in GRAPHICS.H and listed in the following table.

<i>graphics_drivers</i> constant	Numeric Value
DETECT	0 (requests autodetection)
CGA	1
MCGA	2
EGA	3
EGA64	4
EGAMONO	5
RESERVED	6
HERCMONO	7
ATT400	8
VGA	9
PC3270	10

`*graphmode` is an integer that specifies the initial graphics mode (unless `*graphdriver` = DETECT, in which case `*graphmode` is set to the highest resolution available for the detected driver). You can give `*graphmode` a value using a constant of the `graphics_modes` enumeration type, defined in GRAPHICS.H and listed in the following table.

<b>graphics driver</b>	<b>graphics_modes</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Column x Row</b>	<b>Palette</b>	<b>Pages</b>
CGA	CGAC0	0	320x200	C0	1
	CGAC1	1	320x200	C1	1
	CGAC2	2	320x200	C2	1
	CGAC3	3	320x200	C3	1
	CGAHI	4	640x200	2 color	1
MCGA	MCGAC0	0	320x200	C0	1
	MCGAC1	1	320x200	C1	1
	MCGAC2	2	320x200	C2	1
	MCGAC3	3	320x200	C3	1
	MCGAMED	4	640x200	2 color	1
	MCGAHI	5	640x480	2 color	1
EGA	EGALO	0	640x200	16 color	4
	EGAHI	1	640x350	16 color	2
EGA64	EGA64LO	0	640x200	16 color	1
	EGA64HI	1	640x350	4 color	1
EGA- MONO	EGAMONOH1	3	640x350	2 color	1*
	" "	3	" "	2 color	2**
HERC	HERCMONOH1	0	720x348	2 color	2
ATT400	ATT400C0	0	320x200	C0	1
	ATT400C1	1	320x200	C1	1
	ATT400C2	2	320x200	C2	1
	ATT400C3	3	320x200	C3	1
	ATT400MED	4	640x200	2 color	1
	ATT400HI	5	640x400	2 color	1
VGA	VGALO	0	640x200	16 color	2
	VGAMED	1	640x350	16 color	2
	VGAHI	2	640x480	16 color	1
PC3270	PC3270HI	0	720x350	2 color	1
* 64K on EGAMONO card					
** 256K on EGAMONO card					

In the previous table, the **Palette** listings C0, C1, C2, and C3 refer to the four predefined four-color palettes available on CGA (and compatible) systems. You can select the background color (entry #0) in each of these palettes, but the other colors are fixed. These palettes are described in greater detail in Chapter 1 of this

addendum (under “Color Control”) and summarized in the following table.

Palette Number	Color assigned to pixel value		
	1	2	3
0	lightgreen	lightred	yellow
1	lightcyan	lightmagenta	white
2	green	red	brown
3	cyan	magenta	lightgray

After a call to `initgraph`, *\*graphdriver* is set to the current graphics driver, and *\*graphmode* is set to the current graphics mode.

**Return value**      None

`initgraph` always sets the internal error code; on success, it sets the code to 0. If an error occurred, *\*graphdriver* is set to -2, -3, -4, or -5, and `graphresult` returns the same value, as listed here:

- 2      Cannot detect a graphics card
- 3      Cannot find driver file
- 4      Invalid driver
- 5      Insufficient memory to load driver

**Portability**      Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

**See also**            `getgraphmode`, `_graphgetmem`, `initgraph`,  
                 `registerbgidriver`, `restorecrtmode`, `setgraphbufsize`

**Example**

```
#include <graphics.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <conio.h>
#include <process.h>

main()
{
    int g_driver, g_mode, g_error;

    detectgraph(&g_driver, &g_mode, "");

    if (g_driver < 0)
    {
        printf("No graphics hardware detected !\n");
        exit(1);
    }
}
```

```

    }
    printf("Detected graphics driver %d, mode %d\n",g_driver,g_mode);
    getch();

    if (g_mode == EGAHI) g_mode = EGALO      /* override mode if EGA detected */
    initgraph(&g_driver, &g_mode);
    g_error = graphresult();

    if (g_error < 0)
    {
        printf("initgraph error: %s.\n", grapherrormsg(g_error));
        exit(1);
    }
    bar(0, 0, getmaxx()/2, getmaxy());
    getch();
    closegraph();
}

```

---

<b>inline</b>	<i>text</i>
---------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>inline</b> – inserts blank line in text window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void inline(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>inline</b> inserts an empty line in the text window at the cursor position using the current text background color. All lines below the empty one move down one line and the bottom line scrolls off the bottom of the window.
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>clreol, delline, window</b>

---

<b>ldiv</b>	<i>misc</i>
-------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>ldiv</b> – divides two longs, returns quotient and remainder
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt;</code> <code>ldiv_t ldiv(long <i>lnumer</i>, long <i>ldenom</i>):</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>stdlib.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <b>div</b> in this addendum

---

## **lfind** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>lfind</b> – linear search
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt; void *lfind(const void *key, const void *base,             size_t *pnelem, size_t width,             int (*fcmp)(const void *, const void *));</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	stdlib.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>bsearch</b> (in this addendum and in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> )

---

## **line** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>line</b> – draws a line between two specified points
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far line(int x0, int y0, int x1, int y1);</pre>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<pre>void far lineto(int x, int y); void far linerel(int dx, int dy);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>Each of these line-drawing functions draws a line in the current color, using the current line style and thickness.</p> <p><b>line</b> draws a line between the two points specified, <math>(x0,y0)</math> and <math>(x1,y1)</math>, without updating the current position (CP).</p> <p><b>lineto</b> draws a line from the CP to <math>(x,y)</math>, then moves the CP to <math>(x,y)</math>.</p> <p><b>linerel</b> draws a line from the CP to a point that is a relative distance <math>(dx,dy)</math> from the CP. The CP is advanced by <math>(dx,dy)</math>.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>getcolor</b> , <b>getlinesettings</b>

---

## **linerel** *graphics*

---

Name	<b>linerel</b> – draws a line a relative distance from the current position (CP)
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far linerel(int <i>dx</i>, int <i>dy</i>);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see line

---

## **lineto** *graphics*

---

Name	<b>lineto</b> – draws a line from the CP to ( <i>x</i> , <i>y</i> )
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far lineto(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see line

---

## **lowvideo** *text*

---

Name	<b>lowvideo</b> – selects low intensity characters
Usage	<code>void lowvideo(void);</code>
Prototype in	conio.h
Description	see highvideo.

---

## **\_lrotl** *misc*

---

Name	<b>_lrotl</b> – rotates an unsigned long value to the left
Usage	<code>unsigned long _lrotl(unsigned long <i>lvalue</i>, int <i>count</i>);</code>
Prototype in	stdlib.h
Description	see _rotl

---

<b><code>_lrotr</code></b>	<i><b>misc</b></i>
----------------------------	--------------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>_lrotr</code> – rotates an unsigned long value to the right
<b>Usage</b>	<code>unsigned long _lrotr(unsigned long lvalue, int count);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>stdlib.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>_rotr</code>

---

<b><code>lsearch</code></b>	<i><b>modified</b></i>
-----------------------------	------------------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>lsearch</code> – linear search
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt;</code> <code>void *lsearch(const void *key, void *base,</code> <code>            size_t *pnelem, size_t width,</code> <code>            int (*fcmp)(const void *, const void *));</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>stdlib.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>bsearch</code> (in this addendum and in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> )

---

<b><code>malloc</code></b>	<i><b>modified</b></i>
----------------------------	------------------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<code>malloc</code> – allocates main memory
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt;</code> <code>void *malloc(size_t size);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>void *calloc(size_t nelem, size_t elsize);</code> <code>void *realloc(void *ptr, size_t newsize);</code>
<b>Prototypes in</b>	<code>stdlib.h</code> and <code>alloc.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	These functions have the same description as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> .
<b>Return value</b>	These functions return the same values as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> , with the following additions:  If the argument <i>size</i> (for <code>malloc</code> ), <i>elsize</i> (for <code>calloc</code> ), or <i>newsize</i> (for <code>realloc</code> ) == 0, these three functions return NULL.

---

<b>moverel</b>	<i>graphics</i>
----------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>moverel</b> – moves the current position (CP) a relative distance
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far moverel(int <i>dx</i>, int <i>dy</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>moveto</b>

---

<b>movetext</b>	<i>text</i>
-----------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>movetext</b> – copies text on-screen from one rectangle to another
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int movetext(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>, int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>, int <i>newleft</i>, int <i>newtop</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>movetext</b> copies the contents of the onscreen rectangle defined by <i>left</i>, <i>top</i>, <i>right</i>, and <i>bottom</i> to a new rectangle of the same dimensions. The new rectangle's upper left corner is position (<i>newleft</i>, <i>newtop</i>).</p> <p>All coordinates are absolute screen coordinates.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	<b>movetext</b> returns 1 if the operation succeeded; if the operation failed (for example, if you gave coordinates outside the range of the current screen mode), <b>movetext</b> returns 0.
<b>Portability</b>	These text mode functions can be used on IBM PCs and BIOS-compatible systems.
<b>See also</b>	<b>gettext</b>

**Example**

```
/*  
    copy the contents of the old rectangle, whose upper left corner  
    is (5, 15) and whose lower right corner is (20, 25), to a new  
    rectangle whose upper left corner is (10, 20).  
*/  
  
movetext(5, 15, 20, 25, 10, 20);
```



---

## **moveto** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>moveto</b> – moves the CP to $(x,y)$
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; void far moveto(int x, int y);</pre>
<b>Related functions</b>	<b>usage</b> <pre>void far moverel(int dx, int dy);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	Each of these “move current position” functions moves the CP to another position on screen.  <b>moveto</b> moves the current position (CP) to viewport position $(x,y)$ .  <b>moverel</b> moves the current position (CP) $dx$ pixels in the $x$ direction and $dy$ pixels in the $y$ direction.
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

---

## **normvideo** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>normvideo</b> – selects normal intensity characters
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>void normvideo(void);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>highvideo</b>

---

## **nosound** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>nosound</b> – turns PC speaker off
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>void nosound(void);</pre>
<b>Prototype in</b>	dos.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>sound</b>

---

## outtext *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>outtext</b> – displays a string in the viewport
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far outtext(char far *textstring);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>void far outtextxy(int x, int y, char far *textstring);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>Each of these functions displays a text string in the viewport, using the current justification settings and the current font, direction, and size.</p> <p><b>outtext</b> outputs <i>textstring</i> at the CP. If the horizontal text justification is <code>LEFT_TEXT</code> and the text direction is <code>HORIZ_DIR</code>, the CP's <i>x</i> coordinate is advanced by <code>textwidth(textstring)</code>. Otherwise, the CP remains unchanged.</p> <p><b>outtextxy</b> outputs <i>textstring</i> at the given position (<i>x,y</i>).</p> <p>In order to maintain code compatibility when using several fonts, use the <code>textwidth</code> and <code>textheight</code> functions to determine the dimensions of the string.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<code>gettextsettings</code> , <code>textheight</code>

---

## outtextxy *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>outtextxy</b> – sends a string to the specified location
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far outtextxy(int x, int y, char far *textstring);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>outtext</b>

---

## **pieslice** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>pieslice</b> – draws and fills in pie slice
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far pieslice(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>, int <i>stangle</i>, int <i>endangle</i>,                   int <i>radius</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see arc

---

## **putch** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>putch</b> – puts character on screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int putch(int <i>ch</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>putch</b> has been modified so output is written to the current text window. (See the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> for further description.)
<b>Return value</b>	<b>putch</b> returns <i>ch</i> , the character displayed.
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles only.

---

## **putimage** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>putimage</b> – puts a bit image onto the screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far putimage(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>, void far *<i>bitmap</i>, int <i>op</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see getimage

---

<b>putpixel</b>	<i>graphics</i>
-----------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>putpixel</b> – plots a pixel at a specified point
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far putpixel(int <i>x</i>, int <i>y</i>, int <i>pixelcolor</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <code>getpixel</code>

---

<b>puttext</b>	<i>text</i>
----------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>puttext</b> – copies text from memory to screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int puttext(int <i>left</i>, int <i>top</i>, int <i>right</i>, int <i>bottom</i>,             void *<i>source</i>);</code> Prototype in conio.h
<b>Description</b>	see <code>gettext</code>

---

<b>random</b>	<i>misc</i>
---------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>random</b> – random number generator
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt;</code> <code>int random(int <i>num</i>);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>void randomize(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	stdlib.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>random</b> returns a random number between 0 and (<i>num</i>-1). <code>random(<i>num</i>)</code> is a macro defined as <code>rand() % (<i>num</i>)</code>. Both <i>num</i> and the random number returned are integers.</p> <p><b>randomize</b> initializes the random number generator with a random value. Because <b>randomize</b> is implemented as a macro that calls the <b>time</b> function prototyped in <code>TIME.H</code>, we recommend that you also <code>#include &lt;time.h&gt;</code> when using this routine.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	<b>random</b> returns a number between 0 and ( <i>num</i> -1). <b>randomize</b> does not return any value.

**Portability**                      Corresponding functions exist in Turbo Pascal.

**See also**                        **rand, seed**

**Example**

```
#include <stdlib.h>
#include <time.h>

main()                    /* prints a random number of random numbers in the range 0-99 */
{
    int n;
    randomize();
    n = random(20) + 1;                                            /* a random number between 1 and 20 */
    while (n-- > 0)
        printf ("%d ", random (100));
    printf ("\n");
}
```

---

## randomize

*misc*

---

**Name**                        **randomize** – initializes random number generator

**Usage**                        `#include <stdlib.h>`  
                              `void randomize(void);`

**Prototype in**                `stdlib.h`

**Description**                see **random**

---

## read

*modified*

---

**Name**                        **read** – reads from a file

**Usage**                        `int read(int handle, void *buf, unsigned nbyte);`

**Related**

**functions usage**            `int _read(int handle, void *buf, unsigned nbyte);`

**Prototype in**                `io.h`

**Description**                These functions have the same description as given in the *Turbo C Reference Guide*, with the following additions:

The maximum number of bytes that either of these functions can read is 65534, since 65535 (0xFFFF) is the same as -1, which is the error return indicator for these functions.

---

## **realloc** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>realloc</b> – reallocates main memory
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;stdlib.h&gt;</code> <code>void *realloc(void *ptr, size_t newsize);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	stdlib.h, alloc.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>malloc</b> (in this addendum and in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> )

---

## **rectangle** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>rectangle</b> – draws a rectangle
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far rectangle(int left, int top, int right, int bottom);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>rectangle</b> draws a rectangle in the current line style, thickness, and drawing color.  ( <i>left,top</i> ) is the upper left corner of the rectangle, and ( <i>right, bottom</i> ) is its lower right corner.
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>bar</b> , <b>getlinesettings</b> , <b>getcolor</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
int i;  
for (i=0; i<10; i++)  
    rectangle(20-2*i, 20-2*i, 10*(i+2), 10*(i+2));
```

<b>Name</b>	<b>registerbgidriver</b> – registers linked-in graphics driver code
<b>Usage</b>	<pre>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt; int registerbgidriver(void (*driver)(void));</pre>
<b>Related functions</b>	<b>usage</b> <code>int registerbgifont(void (*font)(void));</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>Calling <b>registerbgidriver</b> informs the graphics system about the presence of a linked-in driver; similarly, calling <b>registerbgifont</b> signifies a linked-in stroked character font file. These routines check the linked-in code for the specified driver or font; if the code is valid, they register it in internal tables. Linked-in drivers and fonts are discussed in detail in Appendix D of this addendum.</p> <p>By using the name of a linked-in file in a call to <b>registerbgidriver</b> or <b>registerbgifont</b>, you also tell the compiler (and linker) to link in the object file with that public name.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	<p>Both routines return a negative graphics error code if the specified driver or font is invalid.</p> <p>Otherwise, <b>registerbgidriver</b> returns an internal driver number, and <b>registerbgifont</b> returns the font number of the registered font.</p>
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>See also</b>	<b>initgraph</b> , <b>gettextsettings</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
/* register the EGA/VGA driver */
if (registerbgidriver(EGAVGA_driver) < 0) exit(1);

/* register the gothic font */
if (registerbgifont(gothic_font) != GOTHIC_FONT) exit(1);
```

---

## registerbgifont *graphics*

---

Name	<b>registerbgifont</b> -- registers linked-in stroked font code
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>int registerbgifont(void (*font)(void));</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see registerbgidriver

---

## restorecrtmode *graphics*

---

Name	<b>restorecrtmode</b> --restores the screen mode to its pre-initgraph setting
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far restorecrtmode(void);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	<b>restorecrtmode</b> restores the original video mode detected by <b>initgraph</b> . This function can be used in conjunction with <b>setgraphmode</b> to switch back and forth between text and graphics modes.
Return value	None
Portability	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0
See also	<b>initgraph</b> , <b>setgraphmode</b>

---

## **\_rotr** *misc*

---

Name	<b>_rotr</b> -- rotates a value to the left
Usage	<code>unsigned _rotr(unsigned value, int count);</code>
Related functions usage	<code>unsigned _rotr(unsigned value, int count);</code> <code>unsigned long _lrotr(unsigned long lvalue, int count);</code> <code>unsigned long _lrotr(unsigned long lvalue, int count);</code>
Prototype in	stdlib.h
Description	Each of these functions rotates the given <i>value</i> to the left or right <i>count</i> bits. For <b>_lrotr</b> and <b>_lrotr</b> , <i>lvalue</i> is an



**unsigned long;** for **\_rotr** and **\_rotr**, the value rotated is an **unsigned**.

**\_rotr** rotates *value* by *count* bits to the left

**\_rotr** rotates *value* by *count* bits to the right

**\_lrotr** rotates *lvalue* by *count* bits to the left

**\_lrotr** rotates *lvalue* by *count* bits to the right

**Return value**      Each of these functions returns the rotated value.

### Example

```
#include <stdlib.h>

main()
{
    printf("rotate 0xABCD 4 bits left  = %04X\n", _rotr(0xABCD, 4));
    printf("rotate 0xABCD 4 bits right = %04X\n", _rotr(0xABCD, 4));
    printf("rotate 0x55555555 1 bit left  = %08lX\n", _lrotr(0x55555555L, 1));
    printf("rotate 0xAAAAAAAA 1 bit right = %08lX\n", _lrotr(0xAAAAAAAAL, 1));
}
```

### Output

```
rotate 0xABCD 4 bits left  = BCDA
rotate 0xABCD 4 bits right = DABC
rotate 0x55555555 1 bit left  = AAAAAAAAAA
rotate 0xAAAAAAAA 1 bit right = 55555555
```

---

<b><u>_rotr</u></b>	<i><b>misc</b></i>
<b>Name</b>	<b>_rotr</b> – rotates a value to the right
<b>Usage</b>	<b>unsigned _rotr(unsigned <i>value</i>, int <i>count</i>);</b>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<b>stdlib.h</b>
<b>Description</b>	see <b>_lrotr</b>

---

---

## setactivepage

---

*graphics*

<b>Name</b>	setactivepage – sets active page for graphics output
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> void far setactivepage(int <i>pagenum</i> );
<b>Related functions</b>	void far setvisualpage(int <i>pagenum</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p>setactivepage makes <i>pagenum</i> the active graphics page. All subsequent graphics output will be directed to graphics page <i>pagenum</i>.</p> <p>setvisualpage makes <i>pagenum</i> the visual graphics page.</p> <p>The active graphics page may or may not be the one you see on screen, depending on how many graphics pages are available on your system. Only the EGA, VGA, and Hercules graphics cards support multiple pages.</p> <p>With multiple graphics pages, your program can direct graphics output to an off-screen page, then quickly display the off-screen image by changing the visual page with a call to setvisualpage. This technique is especially useful for animation.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0
<b>Example</b>	

```
cleardevice();
setvisualpage(0);
setactivepage(1);
bar(50, 50, 150, 150);
setvisualpage(1);
```

```
/* make page 0 (=blank) visible */
/* will use page 1 for output */
/* draw a bar in page 1 */
/* show page 1 (with bar) */
```

---

## **setallpalette** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setallpalette</b> – changes all palette colors as specified.
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setallpalette(struct palettetype far *palette);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>getpalette</code>

---

## **setbkcolor** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setbkcolor</b> – sets the current background color using the palette
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setbkcolor(int color);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>getbkcolor</code>

---

## **setcolor** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setcolor</b> – sets the current drawing color using the palette
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setcolor(int color);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>getbkcolor</code>

---

## **setfillpattern** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setfillpattern</b> – selects a user-defined fill pattern
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setfillpattern(char far *upattern, int color);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>graphics.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <code>getfillpattern</code>

---

## setfillstyle

*graphics*

---

Name	<b>setfillstyle</b> – sets the fill pattern and color
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setfillstyle(int <i>pattern</i>, int <i>color</i>);</code>
Prototype in	<code>graphics.h</code>
Description	see <code>getfillsettings</code>

---

## setgraphbufsize

*graphics*

---

Name	<b>setgraphbufsize</b> – changes the size of the internal graphics buffer
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>unsigned far setgraphbufsize(unsigned <i>bufsize</i>);</code>
Prototype in	<code>graphics.h</code>
Description	<p>Some of the graphics routines (such as <b>floodfill</b>) use a memory buffer that is allocated when <b>initgraph</b> is called, and released when <b>closegraph</b> is called. The default size of this buffer, which is allocated by <b>_graphgetmem</b>, is 4096 bytes.</p> <p>You might want to make this buffer smaller (to save memory space), or make it bigger (if, for example, a call to <b>floodfill</b> produces error -7: Out of flood memory). <b>setgraphbufsize</b> tells <b>initgraph</b> how much memory to allocate for this internal graphics buffer when it calls <b>_graphgetmem</b>.</p> <p>You must call <b>setgraphbufsize</b> before calling <b>initgraph</b>.</p>
Return value	<b>setgraphbufsize</b> returns the previous size of the internal buffer.
Portability	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0.
See also	<b>closegraph</b> , <b>initgraph</b>
Example	

```
int cbsize;

cbsize = setgraphbufsize(1000);           /* get current size */
setgraphbufsize(cbsize);                 /* restore size */
printf("The graphics buffer is currently %d bytes.", cbsize);
```

---

## **setgraphmode** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setgraphmode</b> – sets the system to graphics mode, clears the screen
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setgraphmode(int <i>mode</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>getgraphmode</b>

---

## **setlinestyle** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setlinestyle</b> – sets the current line width and style
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setlinestyle(int <i>linestyle</i>, unsigned <i>upattern</i>, int <i>thickness</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>getlinesettings</b>

---

## **setpalette** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setpalette</b> – changes one palette color
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setpalette(int <i>index</i>, int <i>actual_color</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>getpalette</b>

---

## **settextjustify** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>settextjustify</b> – sets text justification
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far settextjustify(int <i>horiz</i>, int <i>vert</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>gettextsettings</b>

---

## settextstyle

---

*graphics*

Name	<b>settextstyle</b> – sets the current text characteristics
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far settextstyle(int <i>font</i>, int <i>direction</i>, int <i>charsize</i>);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	see <code>gettextsettings</code>

---

## setusercharsize

---

*graphics*

Name	<b>setusercharsize</b> – user-defined character magnification factor for stroked fonts
Usage	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>void far setusercharsize(int <i>multx</i>, int <i>divx</i>,                           int <i>multy</i>, int <i>divy</i>);</code>
Prototype in	graphics.h
Description	<p><b>setusercharsize</b> gives you finer control over the size of text from stroked fonts. The values set by <b>setusercharsize</b> are active <i>only</i> if <i>charsize</i> = 0, as set by a previous call to <b>settextstyle</b>.</p> <p>With <b>setusercharsize</b>, you specify factors by which the width and height are scaled. The default width is scaled by <i>multx</i> : <i>divx</i> and the default height is scaled by <i>multy</i> : <i>divy</i>. For example, to make text twice as wide and 50% taller than the default, set</p> <pre>multx = 2;  divx = 1; multy = 3;  divy = 2;</pre>
Return value	None
Portability	A similar routine exists in Turbo Pascal 4.0.
See also	<code>gettextsettings</code>

### Example

```
#include <graphics.h>

main()
{
    int graphdriver = DETECT, graphmode;          /* will request autodetection */
    char *title = "TEXT in a BOX";
```

```

initgraph(&graphdriver, &graphmode, "");          /* initialize graphics */

/* draw a rectangle and fit a text string inside */
settextjustify(CENTER_TEXT, CENTER_TEXT);
setusercharsize(1,1,1,1);
settextstyle(TRIPLEX_FONT, HORIZ_DIR, USER_CHAR_SIZE);
setusercharsize(200, textwidth(title), 100, textheight(title));
settextstyle(TRIPLEX_FONT, HORIZ_DIR, USER_CHAR_SIZE);
rectangle(0, 0, 200, 100);
outtextxy(100, 50, title);

closegraph();
}

```

---

## setviewport *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setviewport</b> – sets the current viewport for graphics output
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> void far setviewport(int <i>left</i> , int <i>top</i> , int <i>right</i> , int <i>bottom</i> , int <i>clipflag</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>getviewsettings</b>

---

## setvisualpage *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>setvisualpage</b> – sets the visual graphics page number
<b>Usage</b>	#include <graphics.h> void far setvisualpage(int <i>pagenum</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>setactivepage</b>

---

## sound *misc*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>sound</b> – turns PC speaker on at specified frequency
<b>Usage</b>	void sound(unsigned <i>frequency</i> );
<b>Related functions</b>	void nosound(void);
<b>Prototype in</b>	dos.h

<b>Description</b>	With a call to <b>sound</b> , you can turn the PC's speaker on at a given frequency. <i>frequency</i> specifies the frequency of the sound in Hertz. To turn the speaker off after a call to <b>sound</b> , call the function <b>nosound</b> .
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	These functions work with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; corresponding functions exist in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>delay</b> , <b>sleep</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```

/* emits a 7-Hz tone for 10 seconds */
/* True story: 7 Hertz is the resonant frequency of a chicken's skull cavity.
   This was determined empirically in Australia, where a new factory generating
   7-Hz tones was located too close to a chicken ranch: when the factory
   started up, all the chickens died.

   Your PC may not be able to emit a 7-Hz tone. */

main()
{
    sound(7);
    delay(10000);
    nosound();
}

```

---

## **spawn...** *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>spawn...</b> – functions that create and run other programs
<b>Usage</b>	Refer to <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>
<b>Prototypes in</b>	<b>process.h</b>
<b>Description</b>	<p>These functions have the same description as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>, with the following exception:</p> <p>The description (given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>) of how <b>spawn...</b> functions search for files is not complete; the <b>spawn...</b> functions search for <i>pathname</i> as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ If no explicit extension is given (for example, <i>pathname</i> = <b>MYPROG</b>), the functions will search for the file as given. If that one is not found, they will add <b>.COM</b> and search again. If that's not found, they'll add <b>.EXE</b> and search one last time.</li> </ul>



- If an explicit extension or period is given (for example, *pathname* = MYPROG.EXE), the functions will search for the file as given.
- For the *spawn...* functions with a *p* suffix, if *pathname* does not contain an explicit directory, the functions will search first the current directory, then the directories set with the DOS PATH environment variable.

<b>strerror</b>	<i>modified</i>
<b>Name</b>	<b>strerror</b> – returns pointer to error message string
<b>Usage</b>	<code>char *strerror(int <i>errnum</i>);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>char *_strerror(const char *<i>str</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	string.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>strerror</b> in version 1.5 differs from the same-named function in version 1.0. The new <b>strerror</b> has been modified for ANSI compatibility: it now takes an <code>int <i>errnum</i></code> parameter, which is an error number, not a string. <b>strerror</b> returns a pointer to the error message string associated with error <i>errnum</i>.</p> <p><b>_strerror</b> allows you to generate customized error messages; it returns a pointer to a null-terminated string containing an error message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If <i>str</i> is NULL, the return value points to the most-recently generated error message.</li> <li>■ If <i>str</i> is not NULL, the return value contains <i>str</i> (your customized error message), a colon, a space, the most-recently generated system error message, and a newline. <i>str</i> should be 94 characters or less.</li> </ul> <p><b>_strerror</b> is the same as the old <b>strerror</b>, except that <i>str</i> is now a <code>const char *</code>, instead of a <code>char *</code>.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	Both functions return a pointer to the string for an error message.

---

## **\_strerror** *misc*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>_strerror</b> – returns pointer to error message string
<b>Usage</b>	<code>char *_strerror(const char *string);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>string.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	see <b>strerror</b> in this addendum.

---

## **strtoul** *misc*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>strtoul</b> – converts a string to an unsigned long
<b>Usage</b>	<code>unsigned long strtoul(const char *str, char **endptr, int radix);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>stdlib.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<b>strtoul</b> operates the same as <b>strtoul</b> , except that it converts a string, <i>str</i> , to an unsigned long value (whereas <b>strtoul</b> converts to a long). Refer to the entry for <b>strtoul</b> (under <b>str...</b> ) in your <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> for more information.
<b>Return value</b>	<b>strtoul</b> returns the converted value, an unsigned long.

---

## **tmpnam** *misc*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>tmpnam</b> – creates a unique file name
<b>Usage</b>	<code>char *tmpnam(char *sptr);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>stdio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>tmpnam</b> creates a unique file name, which can safely be used as the name of a temporary file. <b>tmpnam</b> generates a different string each time you call it, up to <b>TMP_MAX</b> times. <b>TMP_MAX</b> is defined in <b>STDIO.H</b> as 65535.</p> <p>The parameter to <b>tmpnam</b>, <i>sptr</i>, is either <b>NULL</b> or a pointer to an array of at least <b>L_tmpnam</b> characters: <b>L_tmpnam</b> is defined in <b>STDIO.H</b>. If <i>sptr</i> is <b>NULL</b>, <b>tmpnam</b> leaves the generated temporary file name in an internal static object and returns a pointer to that object.</p>

If *sptr* is not NULL, **tmpnam** places its result in that pointed-to array and returns *sptr*.

**Note:** If you do create such a temporary file with **tmpnam**, it is your responsibility to delete the file name (for example, with a call to **remove**). It is not deleted automatically.

Return value	If <i>sptr</i> is NULL, <b>tmpnam</b> returns a pointer to an internal static object. Otherwise, <b>tmpnam</b> returns <i>sptr</i> .
Portability	ANSI C, UNIX
See also	<b>creat</b> , <b>fopen</b> , <b>mktemp</b> , <b>open</b> , <b>tmpfile</b>

---

<b>tmpfile</b>	<i>misc</i>
----------------	-------------

---

Name	<b>tmpfile</b> – opens a binary “scratch” file
Usage	<pre>#include &lt;stdio.h&gt; FILE *tmpfile(void);</pre>
Prototype in	stdio.h
Description	<b>tmpfile</b> creates a temporary binary file and opens it for update (“w+b”). The file is automatically removed when it’s closed or when your program terminates.
Return value	<b>tmpfile</b> returns a pointer to the stream of the temporary file created. If the file can’t be created, <b>tmpfile</b> returns NULL.
Portability	ANSI C, UNIX
See also	<b>mktemp</b> , <b>tmpnam</b>

---

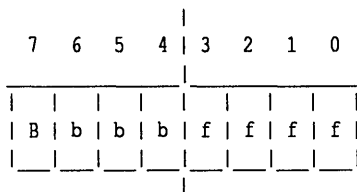
<b>textattr</b>	<i>text</i>
-----------------	-------------

---

Name	<b>textattr</b> – sets text attributes
Usage	<pre>void textattr(int <i>attribute</i>);</pre>
Prototype in	conio.h
Description	<b>textattr</b> lets you set both the foreground and background colors in a single call. (Normally, you set the attributes with <b>textcolor</b> and <b>textbackground</b> .)

This function does not affect any characters currently on the screen; it only affects those displayed using direct console output functions (such as `cprintf`) *after* this function is called.

The color information is encoded in the *attribute* parameter as follows:



In this 8-bit *attribute* parameter,

`ffff` is the 4-bit foreground color (0 to 15)

`bbb` is the 3-bit background color (0 to 7)

`B` is the blink-enable bit

If the blink-enable bit is *on*, the character will blink. This can be accomplished by adding the constant `BLINK` to the attribute.

If you use the symbolic color constants defined in `CONIO.H` for creating text attributes with `textattr`, note the following limitations on the color you select for the background:

You can only select one of the first eight colors for the background.

You must shift the selected background color left by 4 bits to shift it into the correct bit positions.

(These symbolic constants are listed in a table under the lookup entry for `textbackground`.)

**Return value**

None

**Portability**

This text mode function works on IBM PCs and BIOS-compatible systems, only.

**See also**

`textbackground`, `textcolor`

## Example

```
/* select blinking yellow characters on a blue background */
textattr(YELLOW + (BLUE<<4) + BLINK);
cputs("Hello, world");
```

---

## textbackground *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>textbackground</b> – selects new text background color
<b>Usage</b>	<code>void textbackground(int <i>color</i>);</code>
<b>Related functions</b>	<code>void textcolor(int <i>color</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>conio.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>These functions select new colors for the text characters and text background.</p> <p><b>textcolor</b> selects the foreground character color.</p> <p><b>textbackground</b> selects the background text color.</p> <p>The foreground (background color) of all characters subsequently written by the console output functions will be the color given by <i>color</i>. These functions do not affect any characters currently on the screen, but only affect those displayed using direct console output (such as <code>cprintf</code>) after the functions are called.</p> <p><i>color</i> is an integer from 0 to 7 for <b>textbackground</b>, or from 0 to 15 for <b>textcolor</b>. You can give the color using a symbolic constant defined in <code>CONIO.H</code>; if you use these constants, you must <code>#include &lt;conio.h&gt;</code>.</p> <p>The following table lists the allowable colors (as symbolic constants), their numeric values, and whether they are available as foreground and background colors, or just foreground.</p>

<i>Symbolic constant</i>	<i>Numeric value</i>	<i>Foreground or background?</i>
BLACK	0	Both
BLUE	1	Both
GREEN	2	Both
CYAN	3	Both
RED	4	Both
MAGENTA	5	Both
BROWN	6	Both
LIGHTGRAY	7	Both
DARKGRAY	8	Foreground only
LIGHTBLUE	9	Foreground only
LIGHTGREEN	10	Foreground only
LIGHTCYAN	11	Foreground only
LIGHTRED	12	Foreground only
LIGHTMAGENTA	13	Foreground only
YELLOW	14	Foreground only
WHITE	15	Foreground only
BLINK	128	Foreground only

You can make the characters blink by adding 128 to the foreground color. The pre-defined constant BLINK exists for this purpose. For example,

```
textcolor(CYAN + BLINK);
```

**Note:** Some monitors do not recognize the intensity signal used to create the eight “light” colors (8-15). On such monitors, the light colors will be displayed as their “dark” equivalents (0-7). Also, systems which do not display in color may treat these numbers as shades of one color, special patterns, or special attributes (such as underlined, bold, italics, etc.). Exactly what you’ll see on such systems depends upon your own hardware.

<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	These functions work with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; corresponding functions exist in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>textattr</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
textcolor(GREEN);           /* selects green characters */
textbackground(MAGENTA);    /* on a magenta background */
```

---

## **textcolor** *text*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>textcolor</b> – selects new character color in text mode
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;conio.h&gt;</code> <code>void textcolor(int <i>color</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>textbackground</b>

---

## **textheight** *graphics*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>textheight</b> – returns the height of a string, in pixels
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>int far textheight(char far *<i>textstring</i>);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>int far textwidth(char far *<i>textstring</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>textheight</b> takes the current font size and multiplication factor, and determines the height of <i>textstring</i> in pixels.</p> <p><b>textwidth</b> takes the string length, current font size, and multiplication factor, and determines the width of <i>textstring</i> in pixels.</p> <p>These functions are useful for adjusting the spacing between lines, computing viewport heights and widths, sizing a title to make it fit on a graph or in a box, and so on.</p> <p>For example, with the 8×8 bit-mapped font and a multiplication factor of 1 (set by <b>settextstyle</b>), the string TurboC is 8 pixels high and 48 pixels wide.</p> <p>It is important to use <b>textheight</b> and <b>textwidth</b> to compute the height and width of strings, instead of doing the computations manually. By using these functions, no source code modifications have to be made when different fonts are selected.</p>
<b>Return value</b>	<b>textheight</b> returns the text height in pixels; <b>textwidth</b> returns the text width in pixels.
<b>Portability</b>	Similar routines exist in Turbo Pascal 4.0

See also            **gettextsettings, outtext**

---

<b>textmode</b>	<i>text</i>
-----------------	-------------

---

**Name**                    **textmode** – puts screen in text mode

**Usage**                    `void textmode(int mode);`

**Prototype in**            `conio.h`

**Description**            **textmode** selects a specific text mode.

You can give the text mode (the argument *mode*) by using a symbolic constant from the enumeration type *text\_modes* (defined in CONIO.H); if you use these constants, you must `#include <conio.h>`.

The *text\_modes* type constants, their numeric values, and the modes they specify are given in the following table.

Symbolic constant	Numeric value	Text mode
LAST	-1	Previous text mode
BW40	0	Black & white, 40 columns
C40	1	Color, 40 columns
BW80	2	Black & white, 80 columns
C80	3	Color, 80 columns
MONO	7	Monochrome, 80 columns

When **textmode** is called, the current window is reset to the entire screen, and the current text attributes are reset to normal, corresponding to a call to **normvideo**.

Specifying **LAST** to **textmode** causes the most-recently-selected text mode to be reselected. This feature is really only useful when you want to return to text mode after using a graphics mode.

**Return value**            None

**Portability**            This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.

**See also**                **gettextinfo**



---

<b>textwidth</b>	<i>graphics</i>
------------------	-----------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>textwidth</b> – returns the width of a string, in pixels
<b>Usage</b>	<code>#include &lt;graphics.h&gt;</code> <code>int far textwidth(char far *textstring);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	graphics.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>textheight</b>

---

<b>wherex</b>	<i>text</i>
---------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>wherex</b> – gives horizontal cursor position within window
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int wherex(void);</code>
<b>Related functions usage</b>	<code>int wherey(void);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<b>wherex</b> returns the <i>x</i> -coordinate of the current cursor position (within the current text window). <b>wherey</b> returns the <i>y</i> -coordinate of the current cursor position (within the current text window).
<b>Return value</b>	<b>wherex</b> returns an integer in the range 1 to 80. <b>wherey</b> returns an integer in the range 1 to 25.
<b>Portability</b>	These functions work with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; corresponding functions exist in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	<b>gotoxy</b>
<b>Example</b>	

```
printf(" The cursor is at (%d,%d)\n", wherex(),wherey());
```

---

<b>wherey</b>	<i>text</i>
---------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>wherey</b> – gives vertical cursor position within window
<b>Usage</b>	int wherey(void);
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	see <b>wherex</b> .

---

<b>window</b>	<i>text</i>
---------------	-------------

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>window</b> – defines active text mode window
<b>Usage</b>	void window(int <i>left</i> , int <i>top</i> , int <i>right</i> , int <i>bottom</i> );
<b>Prototype in</b>	conio.h
<b>Description</b>	<p><b>window</b> defines a text window on the screen. If the coordinates are in any way invalid, the call to <i>window()</i> is ignored.</p> <p><i>left</i> and <i>top</i> are the screen coordinates of the upper left corner of the window.</p> <p><i>right</i> and <i>bottom</i> are the screen coordinates of the lower right corner.</p> <p>The minimum size of the text window is 1 column by 1 line. The default window is full screen, with these coordinates:</p> <p>80-column mode: 1, 1, 80, 25 40-column mode: 1, 1, 40, 25</p>
<b>Return value</b>	None
<b>Portability</b>	This function works with IBM PCs and compatibles, only; a corresponding function exists in Turbo Pascal.
<b>See also</b>	gettextinfo, textmode

---

## write *modified*

---

<b>Name</b>	<b>write</b> – writes to a file
<b>Usage</b>	<code>int write(int <i>handle</i>, void *<i>buf</i>, unsigned <i>nbyte</i>);</code>
<b>Related functions</b>	<code>int _write(int <i>handle</i>, void *<i>buf</i>, unsigned <i>nbyte</i>);</code>
<b>Prototype in</b>	<code>io.h</code>
<b>Description</b>	<p>These functions have the same description as given in the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i>, with the following additions:</p> <p>The maximum number of bytes that either of these functions can write is 65534, since 65535 (0xFFFF) is the same as -1, which is the error return indicator for these functions.</p>

## Revised Function Prototypes

This chapter updates some of the function prototypes listed in Chapter 2 of the *Turbo C Reference Manual*. In some cases, we revised the prototypes to keep up with the Draft Proposed ANSI C Standard. Others needed corrections. Refer to Chapter 4 in this addendum for information about new functions and about old functions whose descriptions have been modified.

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<b>access</b>	IO.H	int access(const char *filename, int amode);
<b>asctime</b>	TIME.H	char *asctime(const struct tm *tm);
<b>atof</b>	MATH.H STDLIB.H	double atof(const char *nptr);
<b>atoi</b>	STDLIB.H	int atoi(const char *nptr);
<b>atol</b>	STDLIB.H	long atol(const char *nptr);
<b>brk</b>	ALLOC.H	int brk(void *endds);
<b>chdir</b>	DIR.H	int chdir(const char *path);
<b>_chmod</b>	IO.H	int _chmod(const char *filename, int func[, int attrib]);
<b>chmod</b>	IO.H	int chmod(const char *filename, int permiss);
<b>_creat</b>	IO.H	int _creat(const char *filename, int attrib);
<b>creat</b>	IO.H	int creat(const char *filename, int permiss);
<b>creatnew</b>	IO.H	int creatnew(const char *filename, int attrib);

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<b>cscanf</b>	CONIO.H	int cscanf(const char <i>*format</i> [, <i>argument</i> ,...]);
<b>ctime</b>	TIME.H	char *ctime(const time_t <i>*clock</i> );
<b>eof</b>	IO.H	int eof(int <i>handle</i> );
<b>farcoreleft</b>	ALLOC.H	unsigned long farcoreleft(void);
<b>findfirst</b>	DIR.H	int findfirst(const char <i>*pathname</i> , struct fblk <i>*ffblk</i> , int <i>attrib</i> );
<b>fnmerge</b>	DIR.H	void fnmerge(char <i>*path</i> , const char <i>*drive</i> , const char <i>*dir</i> , const char <i>name</i> , const char <i>*ext</i> );
<b>fnsplit</b>	DIR.H	int fnsplit(const char <i>*path</i> , char <i>*drive</i> , char <i>*dir</i> , char <i>*name</i> , char <i>*ext</i> );
<b>fopen</b>	STDIO.H	FILE *fopen(const char <i>*filename</i> , const char <i>*type</i> );
<b>_fpreset</b>	FLOAT.H	void _fpreset(void);
<b>fprintf</b>	STDIO.H	int fprintf(FILE <i>*stream</i> , const char <i>*format</i> [, <i>argument</i> ,...]);
<b>fputchar</b>	STDIO.H	int fputchar(int <i>ch</i> );
<b>fputs</b>	STDIO.H	int fputs(const char <i>*string</i> , FILE <i>*stream</i> );
<b>fread</b>	STDIO.H	size_t fread(void <i>*ptr</i> , size_t <i>size</i> , size_t <i>nitems</i> , FILE <i>*stream</i> )
<b>freopen</b>	STDIO.H	FILE *freopen(const char <i>*filename</i> , const char <i>*type</i> , FILE <i>*stream</i> );
<b>fscanf</b>	STDIO.H	int fscanf(FILE <i>*stream</i> , const char <i>*format</i> [, <i>argument</i> ,...]);
<b>fstat</b>	STAT.H	int fstat(int <i>handle</i> , struct stat <i>*buff</i> );
<b>fwrite</b>	STDIO.H	size_t fwrite(const void <i>*ptr</i> , size_t <i>size</i> , size_t <i>nitems</i> , FILE <i>*stream</i> );
<b>getcwd</b>	DIR.H	char *getcwd(char <i>*buf</i> , int <i>n</i> );
<b>getdfree</b>	DOS.H	void getdfree(unsigned char <i>drive</i> , struct dfree <i>*dfree</i> );
<b>getenv</b>	STDLIB.H	char *getenv(const char <i>*envvar</i> );
<b>getfat</b>	DOS.H	void getfat(unsigned char <i>drive</i> , struct fatinfo <i>*fatblkp</i> );

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<b>getpass</b>	CONIO.H	char *getpass(const char *prompt);
<b>gmtime</b>	TIME.H	struct tm *gmtime(const time_t *clock);
<b>inportb</b>	DOS.H	unsigned char inportb(int port);
<b>ioctl</b>	IO.H	int ioctl(int handle, int cmd[, void * argdx, int argcx]);
<b>keep</b>	DOS.H	void keep(unsigned char status, unsigned size);
<b>localtime</b>	TIME.H	struct tm *localtime(const time_t *clock);
<b>memccpy</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void *memccpy(void *destin, const void *source, int ch, size_t n);
<b>memchr</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void *memchr(const void *s, int ch, size_t n);
<b>memcmp</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	int memcmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);
<b>memcpy</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void *memcpy(void *destin, const void *source, size_t n);
<b>memicmp</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	int memicmp(const void *s1, const void *s2, size_t n);
<b>memmove</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void *memmove(void *destin, const void *source, size_t n);
<b>memset</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void *memset(void *s, int ch, size_t n);
<b>mkdir</b>	DIR.H	int mkdir(const char *pathname);
<b>mktemp</b>	DIR.H	char *mktemp(char *template);
<b>movedata</b>	MEM.H STRING.H	void movedata(unsigned segsrc, unsigned offsrc, unsigned segdest, unsigned offdest, size_t numbytes);
<b>_open</b>	IO.H	int _open(const char *pathname, int access);
<b>open</b>	IO.H	int open(const char *pathname, int access[, unsigned perms]);
<b>outportb</b>	DOS.H	void outportb(int port, unsigned char byte);
<b>parsfnm</b>	DOS.H	char *parsfnm(const char *cmdline, struct fcb *fcbptr, int option);

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<b>peek</b>	DOS.H	int peek(unsigned <i>segment</i> , unsigned <i>offset</i> );
<b>peekb</b>	DOS.H	char peekb(unsigned <i>segment</i> , unsigned <i>offset</i> );
<b>perror</b>	STDIO.H	void perror(const char * <i>s</i> );
<b>poke</b>	DOS.H	void poke(unsigned <i>segment</i> , unsigned <i>offset</i> , int <i>value</i> );
<b>pokeb</b>	DOS.H	void pokeb(unsigned <i>segment</i> , unsigned <i>offset</i> , char <i>value</i> );
<b>printf</b>	STDIO.H	int printf(const char * <i>format</i> [, <i>argument</i> , ...]);
<b>putenv</b>	STDLIB.H	int putenv(const char * <i>envvar</i> );
<b>puts</b>	STDIO.H	int puts(const char * <i>string</i> );
<b>qsort</b>	STDLIB.H	void qsort(void * <i>base</i> , size_t <i>nelem</i> , size_t <i>width</i> , int (* <i>fcmp</i> ) (const void *, const void *));
<b>rename</b>	STDIO.H	int rename(const char * <i>oldname</i> , const char * <i>newname</i> );
<b>rewind</b>	STDIO.H	void rewind(FILE * <i>stream</i> );
<b>rmdir</b>	DIR.H	int rmdir(const char * <i>pathname</i> );
<b>sbrk</b>	ALLOC.H	void *sbrk(int <i>incr</i> );
<b>scanf</b>	STDIO.H	int scanf(const char * <i>format</i> [, <i>argument</i> , ...]);
<b>searchpath</b>	DIR.M	char *searchpath(const char * <i>filename</i> );
<b>setblock</b>	DOS.M	int setblock(unsigned <i>seg</i> , unsigned <i>newsize</i> );
<b>setmode</b>	IO.H	int setmode(int <i>handle</i> , int <i>mode</i> );
<b>setvbuf</b>	STDIO.H	int setvbuf(FILE * <i>stream</i> , char * <i>buf</i> , int <i>type</i> , size_t <i>size</i> );
<b>sleep</b>	DOS.H	void sleep(unsigned <i>seconds</i> );
<b>sprintf</b>	STDIO.H	int sprintf(char * <i>string</i> , const char * <i>format</i> [, <i>argument</i> , ...]);
<b>sscanf</b>	STDIO.H	int sscanf(char * <i>string</i> , const char * <i>format</i> [, <i>argument</i> , ...]);
<b>_status87</b>	FLOAT.H	unsigned int _status87(void);
<b>stime</b>	TIME.H	int stime(time_t * <i>tp</i> );

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<b>stpcpy</b>	STRING.H	char *stpcpy(char *destin, const char *source);
<b>strcat</b>	STRING.H	char *strcat(char *destin, const char *source);
<b>strchr</b>	STRING.H	char *strchr(const char *str, int c);
<b>strcmp</b>	STRING.H	int strcmp(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strcpy</b>	STRING.H	char *strcpy (char *destin, const char *source);
<b>strcspn</b>	STRING.H	size_t strcspn(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strdup</b>	STRING.H	char *strdup(const char *str);
<b>stricmp</b>	STRING.H	int stricmp(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strlen</b>	STRING.H	size_t strlen(const char *str);
<b>strncat</b>	STRING.H	char *strncat(char *destin, const char *source, size_t maxlen);
<b>strncmp</b>	STRING.H	int strncmp(const char *str1, const char *str2, size_t maxlen);
<b>strncpy</b>	STRING.H	char *strncpy(char *destin, const char *source, size_t maxlen);
<b>strnicmp</b>	STRING.H	int strnicmp(const char *str1, const char *str2, size_t maxlen);
<b>strnset</b>	STRING.H	char *strnset(int *str, int ch, size_t n);
<b>strpbrk</b>	STRING.H	char *strpbrk(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strrchr</b>	STRING.H	char *strrchr(const char *str, int c);
<b>strset</b>	STRING.H	char *strset(char *str, int ch);
<b>strspn</b>	STRING.H	size_t strspn(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strstr</b>	STRING.H	char *strstr(const char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strtod</b>	STDLIB.H	double strtod(const char *str, char **endptr);
<b>strtok</b>	STRING.H	char *strtok(char *str1, const char *str2);
<b>strtol</b>	STDLIB.H	long strtol(const char *str, char **endptr, int base);
<b>system</b>	PROCESS.H STDLIB.H	int system(const char *command);



---

<i>Function Name</i>	<i>Header File</i>	<i>Revised Usage</i>
<hr/>		
<b>time</b>	TIME.H	time_t time(time_t *tloc);
<b>ungetc</b>	STDIO.H	int ungetc(int c, FILE *stream);
<b>unlink</b>	DOS.H IO.H	int unlink(const char *filename);
<b>vfprintf</b>	STDIO.H	int vfprintf(FILE *stream, const char *format, va_list param);
<b>vfscanf</b>	STDIO.H	int vfscanf(FILE *stream, const char *format, va_list param);
<b>vprintf</b>	STDIO.H	int vprintf(const char *format, va_list param);
<b>vscanf</b>	STDIO.H	int vscanf(const char *format, va_list param);
<b>vsprintf</b>	STDIO.H	int vsprintf(char *string, const char *format, va_list param);
<b>vsscanf</b>	STDIO.H	int vsscanf(char *string, const char *format, va_list param);

---

## Miscellaneous Information

In this chapter we document miscellaneous changes to the software, along with changes and additions to the *Turbo C User's Guide* and the *Turbo C Reference Guide*. This information doesn't fall under any of the categories covered in the other chapters and appendixes in this addendum. The information presented in this chapter covers:

- TCCONFIG.EXE (formerly called CNVTCFG.EXE)
- BUILTINS.MAK
- streams
- configuration files
- pick lists and pick files
- corrections to the original manuals

### The TCCONFIG.EXE Conversion Utility for Configuration Files

---

The integrated environment and command-line compiler have a number of common options, listed in Table 2.2 of Appendix C in the *Turbo C Reference Guide*. TCCONFIG.EXE takes a configuration file created by one environment and converts it for use by the other.

The conversion command is

```
TCCONFIG SourceFile [DestinationFile]
```

TCCONFIG automatically determines the direction of the conversion: It examines the source file to see whether it is an integrated environment (TC) configuration file or a command-line compiler (TCC) configuration file.

The destination file name is optional. If you don't specify a file name, TCCONFIG uses the default name TURBOC.TC or TURBOC.CFG, depending on the conversion direction. You can give any file name; however, the command-line compiler only looks for a file named TURBOC.CFG when running. It won't run on any other name.

The TURBOC.TC file uses default values for any items not specified by the command-line compiler configuration file (TURBOC.CFG). In addition, only the options in TURBOC.TC that differ from the default values are included in TURBOC.CFG.

TCCONFIG returns you to the DOS prompt when the conversion is done.

## How MAKE Searches for BUILTINS.MAK

---

BUILTINS.MAK is an optional file in which you can store MAKE macros and rules that you use again and again, so you don't have to keep typing them into your makefiles.

The first place MAKE searches for BUILTINS.MAK is the current directory. If it's not there, *and* if you're running under DOS 3.x, MAKE will then search the start directory (where MAKE.EXE resides).

## What Are Streams?

---

Streams are the most portable means for reading or writing data using Turbo C. They are designed to allow flexible and efficient input and output that are not affected by the underlying file or device hardware.

A stream is a file or physical device that you manipulate with a pointer to a FILE object (defined in STDIO.H). The FILE object contains various information about the stream, including the current position of the stream, pointers to any associated buffers, and error or end-of-file indicators.

Your program should never create or copy FILE objects themselves; instead, it should use the pointers returned from functions like **fopen**. Be sure that you do not confuse FILE pointers with DOS file handles (which are used in low-level DOS or UNIX-compatible I/O).

You must first “open” a stream before you can perform I/O on the stream. Opening the stream connects it to the named DOS file or device. The routines that open streams are **fopen**, **fdopen**, and **freopen**. When you open a stream, you indicate whether you want to read or write to the stream, or do both. You also indicate whether you will treat the data of that stream as text or binary data. This last distinction is important because of a minor incompatibility between C stream I/O and DOS text files.

## *Text vs. Binary Streams*

---

Text streams are used for normal DOS text files, such as a file created with the Turbo C editor. C stream I/O assumes that text files are divided into lines separated by a single newline character (which is the ASCII line-feed). DOS text files, however, are stored on disk with two characters between each line, an ASCII carriage-return and a line-feed. In text mode, Turbo C translates carriage-return line-feed (CR/LF) pairs into a single line-feed on input; line-feeds are translated to CR/LF pairs on output.

Binary streams are much simpler than text streams. No such translations are performed. Any character is read or written without change.

A file can be accessed in either text or binary mode without any problems as long as you are aware of and understand the translations taking place in text streams. Turbo C doesn’t “remember” how a file was created or last accessed.

If no translation mode is specified when a stream is opened, it is opened in the default translation mode given by the global variable `_fmode`. By default, `_fmode` is set to text mode.

## *Buffering Streams*

---

Streams are typically buffered when associated with files. This allows I/O at the individual character level—such as with `getc` and `putc`—to be very fast. You can supply your own buffer, change the size of the buffer used, or force the stream to use no buffer at all by calling `setvbuf` or `setbuf`.

Buffers are automatically flushed when the buffer is full, the stream is closed, or the program terminates normally. You can use `fflush` and `flushall` to force the buffers to be flushed manually.

Normally, you use streams to sequentially read or write data. I/O takes place at the current file position. Whenever you read or write data, the program moves the file position to immediately after the just-accessed data.

A stream that is connected to a disk file can also be randomly accessed. You can use `fseek` to position a file, then issue several read or write operations to access the data after that point.

When you are both reading and writing data to a stream, you should not freely mix reading and writing operations. You must flush the stream's buffer between reading and writing data. A call to `fflush`, `flushall`, or `fseek` clears the buffer and allows you to switch operations. For maximum portability, you should flush even when no buffer is present, since other systems may have additional restrictions on mixing input and output operations even without a buffer.

## *Predefined Streams*

---

In addition to streams created by calling `fopen`, five predefined streams are available whenever your program begins execution. The following names correspond to these streams:

<i>Name</i>	<i>I/O</i>	<i>Mode</i>	<i>Stream</i>
<i>stdin</i>	Input	Text	Standard Input
<i>stdout</i>	Output	Text	Standard Output
<i>stderr</i>	Output	Text	Standard Error
<i>stdaux</i>	Both	Binary	Auxiliary I/O
<i>stdprn</i>	Output	Binary	Printer Output

The *stdaux* and *stdprn* streams are specific to DOS and are not portable to other systems.

The *stdin* and *stdout* streams can be redirected by DOS, while the others are connected to specific devices: *stderr* to the console (CON:), *stdprn* to the printer (PRN:), and *stdaux* to the auxiliary port.

The auxiliary port depends on your machine's configuration; it is typically COM1:. Consult your DOS documentation for information about redirecting input or output on a DOS command line. If not redirected, *stdin* and *stdout* are connected to the console (CON: device). Furthermore, if not redirected, *stdin* is line buffered, while *stdout* is unbuffered. The other predefined streams are unbuffered.

To process a predefined stream in a mode other than its default (for example, to process *stdprn* in text mode), use `setmode`. The predefined

stream names are constants; you cannot assign values to them. If you want to reassociate one of them to a file or device, use `freopen`.

## What is a Configuration File?

---

Basically, a configuration file is a file that contains information pertinent to Turbo C. In it, you store such information as your selected compiler options, your linker options, various directories that Turbo C will need to search when compiling and linking your programs, and so on.

There are two types of Turbo C configuration files: one you use with TCC.EXE (command-line Turbo C), and the other you use with TC.EXE (the Turbo C integrated environment). There is only one command-line configuration file; it's named TURBOC.CFG. The integrated environment configuration file can have any file name. The file TCCONFIG.TC is the default (assumed) integrated environment configuration file.

In this section we briefly summarize the command-line configuration file (TURBOC.CFG), then refer you to other documentation in the *Turbo C User's Guide*. After that, we cover the integrated environment configuration files in detail.

### *The TURBOC.CFG Configuration File*

---

When you invoke command-line Turbo C, it looks for a file named TURBOC.CFG. Such a command-line configuration file, if it exists, can contain any of the Turbo C compiler command-line options.

If you've listed your commonly-used options in TURBOC.CFG, you won't need to enter them on the command line when you use TCC.EXE. If you don't want to use certain options that are listed in TURBOC.CFG, you can override them with switches on the command line.

For more information about TURBOC.CFG, refer to "The TURBOC.CFG File" in Chapter 3 of the *Turbo C User's Guide*.

### *The TC Configuration Files*

---

When you start using the Turbo C integrated environment for the first time, there is no configuration file. TC.EXE will start up with all the menu items set to their internal defaults (Memory model will be set to Small, Calling

convention set to C, Keep messages set to No, etc.). In the course of using the integrated environment, you will probably want to change some of the menu items' settings.

If you exit Turbo C without saving the new settings in a configuration file, then the next time you invoke the integrated environment, it will again start up with all the menu items set to their previous defaults. But if, instead, you save the new settings to a configuration file, then the next time the integrated environment starts up, the menu items will be set to the values you chose, and you won't have to go through the process of resetting them.

### ***TCCONFIG.TC***

When you start up TC.EXE, it looks for a configuration file named TCCONFIG.TC. It looks for that file in certain locations (we'll explain exactly where it looks later); if TC.EXE can't find a TCCONFIG.TC file, the integrated environment starts up using the default settings that are built into TC.EXE.

### ***Other TC Configuration Files***

You can also start up TC.EXE at the DOS prompt with a request for a specific configuration file, using the `/c` option. For example, if you type

```
tc /cmyconfig
```

at the DOS prompt, Turbo C will look for a configuration file named MYCONFIG.TC in the current directory (if you give no extension, Turbo C assumes the extension .TC).

If Turbo C can't find the configuration file you named, it will issue a warning message to that effect. It won't look for any other configuration file, but it will still start up, using the built-in default settings.

## **What is Stored in TC Configuration Files?**

The information stored in the TC configuration files can be broken down into two categories: compiler-linker options and TC.EXE-specific values.

The compiler-linker options govern the compiler and linker, and they all have corresponding options in the command-line version of Turbo C, while the TC.EXE-specific values are related to the integrated environment itself. Some examples of these values specific to the integrated environment are Project name, Pick file name, and the Environment options.

## Creating a TC Configuration File

So how do you create a TC configuration file? Unlike the command-line configuration file (TURBOC.CFG), the integrated environment configuration file is not one you can create or modify with an editor. You must select the Store options item from the Options menu, and then the integrated environment will create the configuration file for you.

## Changing Configuration Files Mid-stream

It's easy to change to a different .TC configuration file from within the integrated environment. To do this:

- ▣ Select Restore options from the Options menu. A pop-up box will appear, displaying the last configuration file name you typed (it defaults to \*.tc the first time).
- ▣ You can type in a mask (like \*.tc or ??config.\*) then press *Enter* to bring up a directory listing of .TC files. You then select a file from the directory list.
- ▣ Or you can type in a specific configuration file name (then press *Enter* to load that file).

## Where Does TC.EXE Look for TCCONFIG.TC?

There are two places TC.EXE will look for the default configuration file TCCONFIG.TC. First, it will search the default (current working) directory. If it does not find TCCONFIG.TC there, it will then search the Turbo C directory, *if you have previously set the Turbo C directory using TCINST*.

To find out more about the Turbo C directory and TCINST, read Appendix A, "The New TCINST," in this addendum.

## TCINST vs. the Configuration File: Who's the Boss?

You can use TCINST to set any the items found on Turbo C's Options/Directories or Options/Environment menu, and then store those settings directly in TC.EXE. If there is no TC configuration file to be found when you start up that customized TC.EXE, those settings you customized will be the defaults.



However, if TC.EXE starts up and finds a TCCONFIG.TC file in the default directory (or in the Turbo C directory), that configuration file's settings will take precedence over any default settings you installed with TCINST.

Also, if you invoke TC.EXE with a `/c` option, and Turbo C finds the configuration file you specified, that file's settings will take precedence over the TCINST-installed defaults.

## What Does "Config auto save" Do?

Normally, Turbo C will save the current configuration file (write it out to disk) only when you give the Options/Store options command. However, you can direct Turbo C to automatically save the configuration file under additional circumstances.

Just toggle the Options/Environment/Config auto save menu item to *on*. With Config auto save on, Turbo C will also save the file whenever you select Run or File/OS shell, or when you exit the integrated environment (by selecting File/Quit)—if the configuration file has never been saved, or if it has been at all modified since it was last saved.

With Config auto save on, if the configuration file has not yet been saved, Turbo C will choose a file name for the auto saved file. The chosen name is the last configuration file you stored or retrieved, or TCCONFIG.TC (in the current directory) if you haven't loaded, retrieved or saved a configuration file yet.

## What are Pick Lists and Pick Files?

---

The *pick list* and *pick file* are two features of the Turbo C integrated environment that work together to save the state of your editing sessions. The pick list remembers what files you are editing *while you are in* the integrated environment. The pick file remembers what files you were editing *after you leave* the integrated environment or *after you change contexts within* the integrated environment. (Changing contexts encompasses loading a new configuration file or defining a new pick file name.)

### *The Pick List*

---

The pick list is a menu located in the File menu; you call it up by selecting File/Pick or by pressing the `Alt-F3` hot key. The pick list provides a list of the

eight files most recently loaded into the editor. The top file listed is the file currently in the editor. If there is more than one file name in the pick list, the second file name listed is highlighted; this is the file just previously loaded into the editor.

To load a file from the pick list into the editor, scroll the selection bar to highlight the appropriate file name, then press *Enter*. When you do this, Turbo C will load the selected file into the editor, then the editor will position the cursor in that newly-loaded file at the location you last left it. In addition, any marked block and markers in that file will be exactly as you left them.

The pick list is a handy tool for moving back and forth between your files as you develop your program. By pressing *Alt-F3 Enter* in succession, you can alternate between two files.

If the file you want is not on the pick list, you can select `--load file--` (the last entry on the pick list menu). This will bring up a **Load File Name** input box, and you can type in the name of the file you want (using DOS-style wildcards if necessary). You can also press the *F3* hot key to automatically select File/Load.

## *The Pick File*

---

The pick file stores editor-related information, including the contents of the pick list. For each entry (file) in the pick list, Turbo C stores the file name, cursor position, marked block, and markers.

In addition to information about each file, the pick file contains data on the state of the editor when you last exited. This includes the most recent search-and-replace strings and search options.

To create a pick file, you must define a pick file name. You can do this by entering a file name in the Pick file name menu item on the Options/Directories menu. If you have defined a pick file name, then whenever you exit the integrated environment, Turbo C updates that pick file on disk.

## **When and How Do You Get a Pick File?**

There are two items on the Options/Directories menu that you can look to for information about the pick file: Pick file name and Current pick file.

**Q:** How do you know if you already have a pick file?

- A: You have a pick file if the Current pick file menu item is not blank.
- Q: How did that file name appear in Current pick file?
- A: In one of two ways: Either a file name is explicitly listed in Pick file name, or (if Pick file name is blank) you loaded a default pick file.
- Q: Suppose the Pick file name item explicitly lists a file name. How did that file name get there?
- A: You get a file name in Pick file name by:
1. entering it yourself in the current session, or
  2. entering it in a previous session, saving the configuration file, then using that configuration file in the current session, or
  3. installing it with TCINST
- Q: Suppose Pick file name is blank, but Current pick file is not blank. How did that default pick file get loaded?
- A: There was a default pick file, TCPICK.TCP, in the current directory or (if not there) in the Turbo C directory, and Turbo C loaded it automatically on start-up.

Once a pick file is loaded, the integrated environment remembers the full path name. This information is displayed in the Current pick file menu item.

## When Does Turbo C Save Pick Files?

Turbo C saves the file named in Current pick file whenever you exit the integrated environment. In addition, any time the pick file name is changed (either directly by entering a new name from the menu item, or indirectly by loading a configuration file that contains a different pick file name) Turbo C first saves the existing pick file.

Turbo C will *not* save a pick file to disk when you exit if the Current pick file menu item is blank.

## Corrections to the Original Manuals

---

The following list shows minor corrections to the *Turbo C User's Guide* and *Turbo C Reference Guide*. Before going on, check the row of numbers at the bottom of the copyright page in those manuals (the page behind the title page at the front of the manuals). If the numbers are 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1,

refer to the page numbers listed here in the first column; if the numbers are 10 9 8 7 6 (and possibly 5), refer to the page numbers listed here in the second column.

### *Turbo C User's Guide*

- |     |     |   |
|-----|-----|---|
| 9   | 9   | Delete the phrase "As we explained in the "Introduction,"."   |
| 30  | 34  | Change "Appendix A describes the editor commands...." to "Appendix A of the <i>Turbo C Reference Guide</i> describes the editor commands...." |
| 62  | 70  | In the example code for MYMAIN.C, insert<br>char *GetString(void);<br>between the #include statement and the beginning of<br>main()           |
| 164 | 175 | The line of code that says<br>strcpy(current.last = "Smith"); should say<br>strcpy(current.last, "Smith");                                    |
| 165 | 175 | Replace pstudent -> last = "Jones"; with<br>strcpy(pstudent -> last, "Jones");  |
| 174 | 183 | Delete the curly bracket (}) after fclose(f);   |
| 187 | 195 | In the zwf() statement, change parm1=%d and parm2=%d to<br>parm1=%f and parm2=%f, respectively.   |
| 235 | 244 | In the description of <b>Compact</b> , the phrase "The inverse of<br>medium" does not imply that 1 Mb of static data is<br>possible.          |

### *Turbo C Reference Guide*

- |    |    |   |
|----|----|---|
| —  | 19 | In line five, the phrase "the with double quotes" should<br>read "them with double quotes". |
| 18 | 24 | <u>fmode</u> Usage: Replace "int" with "unsigned".  |
| 41 | 50 | <b>bioskey</b> Description: Replace "BIOS interrupt 0x14" with<br>"Bios interrupt 0x16".    |
| 60 | 70 | <u>_creat</u> Description: First line, change "_create" to "_creat"<br>(no ending e).       |
| 66 | 76 | <b>dosexterr</b> Usage and Description: "DOSERR" should be<br>"DOSERROR".                   |

68	78	<b>dup</b> Description: Change " <b>dup2</b> returns the next file handle available" to " <b>dup</b> returns the next file handle available".
70	80	<b>eof</b> Usage: Delete " * " in " <i>*handle</i> ".
118	127	<b>getftime</b> Usage and Prototype in: Replace "<dos.h>" with "<io.h>".
190	200	<b>rename</b> Return value: Replace "ENOTSAME Not same device" with "EXDEV Cross-link device".
—	209	... <b>scanf</b> %[search_set] conversion: Last two examples on page; replace "A through Z" with "A through F" (twice).
—	210	... <b>scanf</b> %[search_set] conversion: Example at top of page: replace "A through Z" with "A through F".
256	268	Description of <b>Delete character under cursor</b> : Change "This command does not work..." to "This command works...".
318	331	Under " <i>Full File name Macro (\$&lt;),</i> " change both occurrences of <code>.obj.c:</code> to <code>.c.obj:</code>

## The New TCINST

*In this appendix, we cover the new version of the Turbo C Installation (or customization) program, TCINST.EXE, which is included in your Turbo C 1.5 package.*

The first thing you should do after copying the Turbo C 1.5 files to your system is either delete or rename the old TCINST.COM. This is necessary because TCINST for version 1.5 is now an .EXE file. If both the .COM and .EXE TCINST files are on disk and you type `tcinst` *Enter*, DOS will find TCINST.COM (from version 1.0) instead of TCINST.EXE (from version 1.5).

Appendix F in the *Turbo C Reference Guide* covers the original TCINST.COM, shipped with Turbo C version 1.0. The original TCINST.COM *cannot* be used with Turbo C version 1.5, and the new TCINST.EXE *cannot* be used with Turbo C version 1.0. Don't worry, though: TCINST will reject a mismatched version of TC.EXE with an error message. For information about the new TCINST, read *this* appendix, not Appendix F.

## What Is TCINST?

TCINST is the Turbo C Installation program; you use it to customize TC.EXE, the integrated development environment version of Turbo C. Through TCINST, you can change various default settings in the TC operating environment, such as the screen size, editing modes, menu colors, and default directories. TCINST lets you change the environment in which you operate Turbo C: It directly modifies certain default values within your copy of TC.EXE.

With TCINST, you can do any of the following:

- set up paths to the directories where your include, library, configuration, Help, pick, and output files are located
- customize the editor command keys
- set up Turbo C's editor defaults and on-screen appearance
- set up the default video display mode
- change screen colors
- resize Turbo C's Edit and Message windows

Turbo C comes ready to run: There is no installation *per se*. You can copy the files from the distribution disks to your working floppies (or hard disk), as described in Chapter 1 of the *Turbo C User's Guide*, then run Turbo C. However, you will need to run TCINST if you want to change the defaults directly in TC.EXE.

If you want to store path names (to all the different directories you use when running TC) directly in TC.EXE, you'll need to use the Turbo C directories option.

You can use the Editor commands option to reconfigure (customize) the interactive editor's keystrokes to your liking.

The Setup environment option is for setting various values that have to do with the default editing modes and the appearance of the TC integrated environment.

With Display mode, you can specify the video display mode that TC will operate in, and whether yours is a "snowy" video adapter.

You can customize the colors of almost every part of TC's integrated environment through the Colors option.

The Resize windows option allows you to change the sizes of the Edit and Message windows.

## Running TCINST

---

1) The syntax for TCINST is

```
tcinst [/c] [pathname]
```

Both *pathname* and */c* are optional. If *pathname* is not supplied, TCINST looks for TC.EXE in the current directory. Otherwise, it uses the given path name. Normally, TCINST comes up in black and white, even on a color monitor. If you want to run TCINST in color, give the */c* option.

**Note:** You can use one version of TCINST to customize several different copies of Turbo C on your system. These various copies of TC.EXE can have different executable program names; all you need to do is invoke TCINST and give a path name to the copy of TC.EXE you're customizing; for example,

```
tcinst tc.exe  
tcinst ..\..\bwtc.exe  
tcinst /c c:\borland\colortc.exe
```

In this way, you can customize the different copies of Turbo C on your system to use different editor command keys, different menu colors, and so on.

- 2) From the main TCINST installation menu, you can select Turbo C directories, Editor commands, Setup environment, Display mode, Colors, Resize windows, or Quit/save.

You can either press the highlighted capital letter of a given option, or use the *Up* and *Down* arrow keys to move to your selection and then press *Enter*. For instance, press *C* to modify the Colors of the TC integrated environment.

- 3) In general, pressing *Esc* (more than once if necessary) returns you from a submenu to the main installation menu.

## *The Turbo C Directories Option*

---

With Turbo C directories, you can specify a path to each of the TC.EXE default directories. These are the directories Turbo C searches when looking for an alternate configuration file, the Help file, the include and library files, and the directory where it will place your program output.

When you select Turbo C directories, TCINST brings up a submenu. The items on this submenu are

- ▣ Include directories
- ▣ Library directories
- ▣ Output directory
- ▣ Turbo C directory
- ▣ Pick file name

You enter names for each of these just as you do for the corresponding menu items in TC.EXE. If you are not certain of each item's syntax, refer first to Chapter 2 in this addendum and then Chapter 2 in the *Turbo C User's Guide*.



### **Include directories and Library directories:**

You can enter multiple directories in Include directories and Library directories: You must separate the directory path names with a semicolon ( ; ), and you can enter a maximum of 127 characters with either menu item. You can enter absolute or relative path names.

### **Output directory and Turbo C directory:**

The Output directory and Turbo C directory menu items each take one directory path name; each item accepts a maximum of 64 characters.

The Turbo C directory is where TC looks for the Help file and TCCONFIG.TC (the default configuration file) if they aren't in the current directory.

### **Pick file name:**

When you select this menu item, an input window pops up. In it, you type the path name of the Pick file you want Turbo C to load or create. There is no default installed Pick file name.

After typing a path name (or names) for any of the Setup environment menu items, press *Enter* to accept, then press *Esc* to return to the main TCINST installation menu. When you exit the program, TCINST prompts you on whether you want to save the changes. Once you save the Turbo C directories paths, the locations are written to disk and become part of TC.EXE's default settings.

## ***The Editor Commands Option***

---

Turbo C's interactive editor provides many editing functions, including commands for

- cursor movement
- text insertion and deletion
- block and file manipulation
- string search (plus search-and-replace)

These editing commands are assigned to certain keys (or key combinations): They are explained in detail in Appendix A of the *Turbo C Reference Guide*.

When you select Editor commands from TCINST's main installation menu, the **Install Editor** screen comes up, displaying three columns of text.

- The first column (on the left) describes all the functions available in TC's interactive editor.
- The second column lists the *Primary* keystrokes: what keys or special key combinations you press to invoke a particular editor command.
- The third column lists the *Secondary* keystrokes: These are optional alternate keystrokes you can also press to invoke the same editor command.

**Note:** Secondary keystrokes always take precedence over primary keystrokes.

The bottom lines of text in the **Install Editor** screen summarize the keys you use to select entries in the Primary and Secondary columns.

<i>Key</i>	<i>Legend</i>	<i>What It Does</i>
<i>Left, Right Up and Down arrow keys</i>	select	Selects the editor command you want to re-key.
<i>Page Up and Page Down arrow keys</i>	page	Scrolls up or down one full screen page
<i>Enter</i>	modify	Enters the keystroke-modifying mode.
<i>R</i>	restore factory defaults	Resets all editor commands to the factory default keystrokes.
<i>Esc</i>	exit	Leaves the <b>Install Editor</b> screen and returns to the main TCINST installation menu.
<i>F4</i>	Key Modes	Toggles between the three flavors of keystroke combinations.

After you press *Enter* to enter the **modify** mode, a pop-up window lists the current defined keystrokes for the selected command, and the bottom lines of text in the **Install Editor** screen summarize the keys you use to change those keystrokes.

<i>Key</i>	<i>Legend</i>	<i>What It Does</i>
<i>Backspace</i>	backspace	Deletes keystroke to left of cursor
<i>Enter</i>	accept	Accepts newly defined keystrokes for selected editor command.
<i>Esc</i>	abandon changes	Abandons changes to the current selection, restoring the command's original keystrokes, and returns to the Install Editor screen (ready to select another editor command).
<i>F2</i>	restore	Abandons changes to current selection, restoring the command's original keystrokes, but keeps the current command selected for re-definition.
<i>F3</i>	clear	Clears current selection's keystroke definition, but keeps the current command selected for re-definition.
<i>F4</i>	Key Modes	Toggles between the three flavors of keystroke combinations: <b>WordStar-like</b> , <b>Ignore case</b> , and <b>Verbatim</b> .

**Note:** To enter the keys *F2* , *F3* , or *F4* as part of an editor command key sequence, first press the backquote ( ' ) key, then the appropriate function key.

Keystroke combinations come in three flavors: **WordStar-like**, **Ignore case**, and **Verbatim**. These are listed on the bottom line of the screen; the highlighted one is the flavor of the current selection. In all cases, the first character of the combination must be a special key or a control character. The combination flavor governs how the subsequent characters are handled.

▣ **WordStar-like:** In this mode, if you type a letter or the character [ , ] , \ , ^ , or - ) , it is automatically entered as a Control-Character combination. For example,

typing a or A or Ctrl A	yields	< Ctrl A >
typing y or Y or Ctrl y	yields	< Ctrl Y >
typing [	yields	< Ctrl [ >

For example, if you customize an editor command to be < Ctrl A > < Ctrl B > in WordStar-like mode, you can type any of the following in the TC editor to activate that command:

```
< Ctrl A > < Ctrl B >
< Ctrl A > B
< Ctrl A > b
```

▣ **Ignore case:** In this mode, all alpha (letter) keys you enter are converted to their uppercase equivalents. When you type a letter in this mode, it is *not* automatically entered as a Control-Character combination; if a keystroke is to be a Control-Letter combination, you must hold down the Ctrl key while typing the letter. For example, in this mode, < Ctrl A > B and < Ctrl A > b are the same, but differ from < Ctrl A > < Ctrl B >.

▣ **Verbatim:** If you type a letter in this mode, it is entered exactly as you type it. So, for example, < Ctrl A > < Ctrl B > , < Ctrl A > B , and < Ctrl A > b are all distinct.

## Allowed Keystrokes

Although TCINST provides you with almost boundless flexibility in customizing the Turbo C editor commands to your own tastes, there are a few rules governing the keystroke sequences you can define. Some of the rules apply to any keystroke definition, while others come into effect only in certain keystroke modes.

1. You can enter a maximum of six keystrokes for any given editor command. Certain key combinations are equivalent to two keystrokes: These include *Alt* (*any valid key*); the cursor-movement keys (*Up*, *Page Down*, *Del*, etc.); and all function keys or function key combinations (*F4*, *Shift-F7*, *Alt-F8*, etc.).
2. The first keystroke must be a character that is non-alphanumeric and non-punctuation: i.e., it must be a Control key or a special key.
3. To enter the *Esc* key as a command keystroke, type Ctrl [
4. To enter the *Backspace* key as a command keystroke, type Ctrl H

5. To enter the *Enter* key as a command keystroke, type *Ctrl M*
6. The Turbo C predefined Help function keys (*F1* and *Alt F1*) can't be reassigned as Turbo C editor command keys. Any other function key can, however. If you enter a Turbo C hot key as part of an editor command key sequence, TCINST will issue a warning that you are overriding a hot key in the editor and verify that you want to override that key. Chapter 2 of the *Turbo C User's Guide* contains a complete list of Turbo C's predefined hot keys.

## *The Setup Environment Option*

---

You can install several editor default modes of operation with this option: eight of the items on this menu are toggles, and the ninth one brings up a submenu. If you are not familiar with these items, refer first to Chapter 2 in this addendum and then Chapter 2 in the *Turbo C User's Guide*.

The items on the Setup environment menu and their significance are described here.

### **Backup source files**

(*on* by default) With Backup source files *on*, Turbo C automatically creates a backup of your source file when you do a File/Save. It uses the same file name, and adds a .BAK extension: the backup file for *filename.C* would be *filename.BAK*. With Backup source files *off*, no .BAK file is created.

### **Edit auto save**

(*on* by default) With Edit auto save *on*, Turbo C automatically saves the file in the editor (if it's been modified since last saved) whenever you use Run or File/OS shell. This helps prevent loss of your source files in the event of some calamity. With Edit auto save *off*, no such automatic saving occurs.

### **Config auto save**

(*on* by default) With Config auto save *on*, Turbo C automatically saves the configuration file (if it's been modified since last saved) whenever you use Run, File/OS shell, or File/Quit.

### **Zoom state**

With Zoom state *on*, Turbo C starts up with the Edit window occupying the full screen; when you switch to the Message window, it will also be full-screen. With Zoom state *off*, the Edit window occupies the top portion of the screen, above the Message window. (You can resize the

windows with the **Resize windows** option from the main TCINST installation menu.)

### **Insert mode**

(*on* by default.) With **Insert mode** *on*, the editor inserts anything you enter from the keyboard at the cursor position, and pushes existing text to the right of the cursor even further right. Toggling **Insert mode** *off* allows you to overwrite text at the cursor.

### **Autoindent mode**

(*on* by default.) With **Autoindent mode** *on*, the cursor returns to the starting column of the previous line when you press **Enter**. When **Autoindent mode** is toggled *off*, the cursor always returns to column one.

### **Use tabs**

(*on* by default.) With **Use tabs** *on*, when you press the **Tab** key, the editor places a tab character (^I) in the text using the tab size specified with **Tab size**. With **Use tabs** *off*, when you press the **Tab** key, the editor inserts enough space characters to align the cursor with the first letter of each word in the previous line.

### **Screen size**

When you select **Screen size**, a three-item submenu pops up. With the items in this menu, you can set the Turbo C integrated environment display to one of three sizes (25-, 43-, or 50-line). The available sizes depend on your hardware: 25-line mode is always available; 43-line mode is for systems with an EGA, while 50-line mode is for VGA-equipped systems.

Look at the Quick-Ref line for directions on how to select these options. You can change the operating environment defaults to suit your preferences (and your monitor) then save them as part of Turbo C. Of course, you'll still be able to change these settings from inside Turbo C's editor (or from the **Options/Environment** menu).

**Note:** Any option that you install with TCINST that *also* appears as a menu-settable option in TC.EXE will be overridden whenever you load a configuration file that contains a different setting for that option.

## *The Display Mode Option*

---

Normally, Turbo C correctly detects your system's video mode. You should only change the Display mode option if one of the following holds true:

- You want to select a mode other than the current video mode.
- You have a Color Graphics Adapter that doesn't "snow".
- You think Turbo C is incorrectly detecting your hardware.
- You have a laptop or a system with a composite screen (which acts like a CGA with only one color). For this situation, select Black and white.

Press *D* to select Display mode from the installation menu. A pop-up menu appears; from this menu, you can select the screen mode Turbo C will use during operation. Your options include Default, Color, Black and white, or Monochrome. These are fairly intuitive.

### **Default**

By default, Turbo C always operates in the mode that is active when you load it.

### **Color**

Turbo C uses 80-column color mode, no matter what mode is active when you load TC.EXE, and switches back to the previously active mode when you exit.

### **Black and white**

Turbo C uses 80-column black and white mode characters, no matter what mode is active, and switches back to the previously active mode when you exit. Use this with laptops and composite monitors.

### **Monochrome**

Turbo C uses monochrome mode, no matter what mode is active, and switches back to the previously active mode when you exit.

When you select one of the first three options, the program conducts a video test on your screen; refer to the Quick-Ref line for instructions on what to do. When you press any key, a window comes up with the query

Was there Snow on the screen?

You can choose

- Yes, the screen was "snowy"
- No, always turn off snow checking
- Maybe, always check the hardware

Look at the Quick-Ref line for more about Maybe. Press *Esc* to return to the main installation menu.

## *The Color Customization Option*

---

Pressing *C* from the main installation menu allows you to make extensive changes to the Colors of your version of Turbo C. After you press *C*, a menu with these options appears:

- ▣ Customize colors
- ▣ Default color set
- ▣ Turquoise color set
- ▣ Magenta color set

Because there are nearly 50 different screen items that you can color-customize, you will probably find it easier to choose a *preset* set of colors to your liking.

There are three preset color sets to choose from. Press *D*, *T*, or *M*, and scroll through the colors for the Turbo C screen items using the *PgUp* and *PgDn* keys. If none of the preset color sets is to your liking, you can design your own.

To make custom colors, press *C* to Customize colors. Now you have a choice of 12 types of items that can be color-customized in Turbo C; some of these are text items, some are screen lines and boxes. Choose one of these items by pressing a letter *A* through *L*.

Once you choose a screen item to color-customize, you will see a pop-up menu and a *view port*. The view port is an example of the screen item you chose, while the pop-up menu displays the components of that selection. The view port also reflects the change in colors as you scroll through the color palette.

For example, if you choose *H* to customize the colors of Turbo C's error boxes, you'll see a new pop-up menu with the four different parts of an error box: its Title, Border, Normal text, and Highlighted text.

You can now select one of the components from the pop-up menu. Type the appropriate highlighted letter, and you're treated to a color palette for the item you chose. Using the arrow keys, select a color to your liking from the palette. Watch the view port to see how the item looks in that color. Press *Enter* to record your selection.



Repeat this procedure for every screen item you want to color-customize. When you are finished, press *Esc* until you are back at the main installation menu.

**Note:** Turbo C maintains three internal color tables: one each for color, black and white, and monochrome. TCINST allows you to change only one of these three sets of colors at a time, based upon your current video mode. For example, if you want to change to the black and white color table, you must set your video mode to BW80 at the DOS prompt and then run TCINST.

## *The Resize Windows Option*

---

This option allows you to change the respective sizes of Turbo C's Edit and Message windows. Press *R* to choose Resize windows from the main installation menu.

Using the *Up* and *Down* arrow keys, you can move the bar dividing the Edit window from the Message window. Neither window can be smaller than three lines. When you have resized the windows to your liking, press *Enter*. You can discard your changes and return to the Installation menu by pressing *Esc*.

## Quitting the Program

---

Once you have made all desired changes, select *Quit/save* at the main installation menu. The message

Save changes to TC.EXE? (Y/N)

appears at the bottom of the screen.

- If you press *Y* (for Yes), all the changes you have made are permanently installed into Turbo C. (You can always run TCINST again if you want to change them.)
- If you press *N* (for No), your changes are ignored and you are returned to the operating system prompt without Turbo C's defaults or startup appearance being changed.

If you decide you want to restore the original Turbo C factory defaults, simply copy TC.EXE from your master disk onto your work disk. You can also restore the Editor commands by selecting the *E* option at the main menu, then press *R* (for Restore factory defaults) and *Esc*.

## TLIB: The Turbo Librarian

*In this appendix, we describe TLIB, the Turbo Librarian included with Turbo C version 1.5.*

### What Is TLIB?

TLIB is Borland's Turbo Librarian: It is a utility that manages libraries of individual .OBJ (object module) files. A library is a very convenient way of dealing with a collection of object modules as a single unit.

The libraries included with Turbo C were built with TLIB. Using TLIB, you can build your own libraries, or you can modify the Turbo C libraries, your own libraries, libraries furnished by other programmers, or commercial libraries you have purchased. You can use TLIB to

- *create* a new library from a group of object modules
- *add* object modules or other libraries to an existing library
- *remove* object modules from an existing library
- *replace* object modules from an existing library
- *extract* object modules from an existing library
- *list* the contents of a new or existing library

When modifying an existing library, TLIB always creates a copy of the original library with a .BAK extension.

Although TLIB is not essential to creating executable programs with Turbo C, it is a useful programmer productivity tool. You will find TLIB indispensable for large development projects. If you work with object

module libraries developed by others, you can use TLIB to maintain those libraries when necessary.

## The Advantages of Using Object Module Libraries

---

When you program in C, you often create a collection of useful C functions, like the functions in the C runtime library. Because of C's modularity, you are likely to split those functions into many separately compiled source files. You use only a subset of functions from the entire collection in any particular program. It can become quite tedious, however, to figure out exactly which files you are using. If you always include all the source files, on the other hand, your program becomes extremely large and unwieldy.

An object module library solves the problem of managing a collection of C functions. When you link your program with a library, the linker scans the library and automatically selects only those modules needed for the current program. In addition, a library consumes less disk space than a collection of object module files, especially if each of the object files is small. A library also speeds up the action of the linker, because it only opens a single file, instead of one file for each object module.

## The Components of a TLIB Command Line

---

You run TLIB by typing a TLIB command line at the DOS prompt. To get a summary of TLIB's usage, just type `TLIB Enter`.

The TLIB command line takes the following general form, where items listed in square brackets (`[like this]`) are optional:

```
tlib libname [/C] [operations] [, listfile]
```

This section summarizes each of these command-line components; the following sections provide details about using TLIB. For examples of how to use TLIB, refer to the "Examples" section at the end of this appendix.

<i>Component</i>	<i>Description</i>
<b>tlib</b>	The command name that invokes TLIB.
<b>libname</b>	<p>The DOS path name of the library you want to create or manage. Every TLIB command must be given a <i>libname</i>. Wildcards are not allowed. TLIB assumes an extension of .LIB if none is given. We recommend that you do not use an extension other than .LIB, since both TCC and TC's project-make facility require the .LIB extension in order to recognize library files.</p> <p>Note that if the named library does not exist and there are <i>add</i> operations, TLIB creates the library.</p>
<b>/C</b>	The 'Case sensitive' flag. This option is not normally used; see "Advanced Operation: The /C Option " for a detailed explanation.
<b>operations</b>	The list of operations TLIB performs. Operations may appear in any order. If you only want to examine the contents of the library, you don't have to give any operations at all.
<b>listfile</b>	<p>The name of the file listing library contents. The <i>listfile</i> name (if given) must be preceded by a comma. If you do not give a file name, no listing is produced. The listing is an alphabetical list of each module, followed by an alphabetical list of each public symbol defined in that module.</p> <p>You may direct the listing to the screen by using the <i>listfile</i> name CON, or to the printer by using the name PRN.</p>

## *The Operation List*

The operation list describes what actions you want TLIB to do. It consists of a sequence of operations given one after the other. Each operation consists of a one- or two-character *action symbol* followed by a file or module name. White space may be used around either the action symbol or the file or module name, but it cannot appear in the middle of a two-character action or in a name.

You can put as many operations as you like on the command line, up to the DOS-imposed line-length limit of 127 characters. The order of the operations is not important. TLIB always applies the operations in a specific order:

1. All extract operations are done first.
2. All remove operations are done next.
3. All add operations are done last.

Replacing a module is treated as first removing it, then adding the replacement module.

## File and Module Names

When TLIB adds an object module file to a library, the file is simply called a *module*. TLIB finds the name of a module by taking the given file name and stripping any drive, path, and extension information from it. (Typically, drive, path, and extension are not given.)

Note that TLIB always assumes reasonable defaults. For example, to add a module that has an .OBJ extension from the current directory, you only need to supply the module name, not the path and .OBJ extension.

Wildcards are never allowed in file or module names.

## TLIB Operations

TLIB recognizes three action symbols (-, +, \*), which you can use singly or combined in pairs for a total of five distinct operations. For operations that use a pair of characters, the order of the characters is not important. The action symbols and what they do are listed here:

---

<i>Action Symbol</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Description</i>
+	Add	TLIB adds the named file to the library. If the file has no extension given, TLIB assumes an extension of .OBJ. If the file is itself a library (with a .LIB extension), then the operation adds all of the modules in the named library to the target library.

If a module being added already exists, TLIB displays a message and does not add the new module.

- **Remove**    TLIB removes the named module from the library. If the module does not exist in the library, TLIB displays a message.
- \*     **Extract**    TLIB creates the named file by copying the corresponding module from the library to the file. If the module does not exist, TLIB displays a message and does not create a file. If the named file already exists, it is overwritten.
- +    **Replace**    TLIB replaces the named module with the corresponding file. This is just a shorthand for a *remove* followed by an *add* operation.
- + -    **Replace**    TLIB replaces the named module with the corresponding file. This is just a shorthand for a *remove* followed by an *add* operation.
- \*    **Extract &**    TLIB copies the named module to the corresponding
- \*-    **Remove**    file name and then removes it from the library. This is just a shorthand for an *extract* followed by a *remove* operation.

A remove operation only needs a module name, but TLIB allows you to enter a full path name with drive and extension included. However, everything but the module name is ignored.

It is not possible to rename modules in a library. To rename a module, you first must extract and remove it, rename the file just created, and, finally, add it back into the library.

## *Creating a Library*

---

To create a library, you simply add modules to a library that does not yet exist.

## Using Response Files

---

When you are dealing with a large number of operations, or if you find yourself repeating certain sets of operations over and over, you will probably want to start using *response files*. A response file is simply an ASCII text file (easily created with Turbo C editor) that contains all or part of a TLIB command. Using response files, you can build TLIB commands larger than would fit on one DOS command line.

To use a response file *pathname*, specify @<*pathname*> at any position on the TLIB command line.

- More than one line of text can make up a response file; you use the “and” character (&) at the end of a line to indicate that another line follows.
- You don’t need to put the entire TLIB command in the response file; the file can provide a portion of the TLIB command line, and you can type in the rest.
- You can use more than one response file in a single TLIB command line.

See “Examples” for a sample response file and a TLIB command line incorporating it.

## Advanced Operation: The /C Option

---

When you add a module to a library, TLIB maintains a dictionary of all public symbols defined in the modules of the library. All symbols in the library must be distinct. If you try to add a module to the library that would cause a duplicate symbol, TLIB will display a message and not add the module.

Normally, when TLIB checks for duplicate symbols in the library, uppercase and lowercase letters are not considered as distinct. For example, the symbols *lookup* and *LOOKUP* are treated as duplicates. Since C *does* treat uppercase and lowercase letters as distinct, you need to use the /c option to add a module to a library that includes a symbol that differs *only in case* from one already in the library. The /c option forces TLIB to accept a module with symbols in it that differ only in case from symbols already in the library.

It may seem odd that, without the /c option, TLIB rejects symbols that differ only in case, especially since C is a case-sensitive language. The reason is that some linkers fail to distinguish between symbols in a library that differ only in case.

TLINK has no problem distinguishing uppercase and lowercase symbols, and it will properly accept a library containing symbols that differ only in case. As long as you only use the library with TLINK, you can use the TLIB /c option without any problems.

However, if you want to use the library with other linkers (or allow other people to use the library with other linkers), for your own protection you should not use the /c option.

## Examples

---

Here are some simple examples demonstrating the different things you can do with TLIB.

- 1) To create a library named MYLIB.LIB with modules X.OBJ, Y.OBJ, and Z.OBJ, type

```
tlib mylib +x +y +z
```

- 2) To create a library as in #1 and get a listing, too, type

```
tlib mylib +x +y +z, mylib.lst
```

- 3) To get a listing of an existing library CS.LIB, type

```
tlib cs, cs.lst
```

- 4) To replace module X.OBJ with a new copy, add A.OBJ and delete Z.OBJ from MYLIB.LIB, type

```
tlib mylib -x +a -z
```

- 5) To extract module Y.OBJ from MYLIB.LIB and get a listing, type

```
tlib mylib *y, mylib.lst
```

- 6) To create a new library with modules A.OBJ, B.OBJ, ..., G.OBJ using a response file:

First create a text file, ALPHA.RSP, with

```
+a.obj +b.obj +c.obj &  
+d.obj +e.obj +f.obj &  
+g.obj
```

Then use the TLIB command:

```
tlib alpha @alpha.rsp, alpha.lst
```





## GREP: A File-Search Utility

*In this appendix, we describe GREP.COM, Turbo C's very fast version of the well-known UNIX file-search utility.*

### What Is GREP?

GREP is a powerful search utility that can search for text in several files at once.

The general command-line syntax for GREP is:

```
grep [options] searchstring filespec [filespec filespec ... filespec]
```

For example, if you want to see in which source files you call the **setupmodem** function, you could use GREP to search the contents of all the .C files in your directory to look for the string **setupmymodem**, like this:

```
grep setupmodem *.c
```

### The GREP Options

In the command line, *options* are one or more single characters preceded by a dash symbol (-). Each individual character is a switch that you can turn *on* or *off*: type the plus symbol (+) after a character to turn the option *on*, or type a dash (-) after the character to turn the option *off*.

The default is *on* (the + is implied): for example, **-r** means the same thing as **-r+**. You can list multiple options individually (like this: **-i -d -l**) or you

can combine them (like this: `-ild` or `-il -d`, etc.): they're all the same to GREP.

Here is a list of the option characters used with GREP and their meanings:

- `-c` *Count only:* Only a count of matching lines is printed. For each file that contains at least one matching line, GREP prints the file name and a count of the number of matching lines. Matching lines are not printed.
- `-d` *Directories:* For each *filespec* specified on the command line, GREP searches for all files that match the file specification, both in the directory specified *and* in all subdirectories below the specified directory. If you give a *filespec* without a path, GREP assumes the files are in the current directory.
- `-i` *Ignore case:* GREP ignores upper/lowercase differences (case folding). GREP treats all letters *a-z* as being identical to the corresponding letters *A-Z* in all situations.
- `-l` *List match files:* Only the name of each file containing a match is printed. After GREP finds a match, it prints the file name and processing immediately moves on to the next file.
- `-n` *Numbers:* Each matching line that GREP prints is preceded by its line number.
- `-r` *Regular expression search:* The text defined by *searchstring* is treated as a regular expression instead of as a literal string.
- `-v` *Non-match:* Only non-matching lines are printed. Only lines that *do not* contain the search string are considered to be non-matching lines.
- `-w` *Write options:* GREP will combine the options given on the command line with its default options and write these to the GREP.COM file as the new defaults. (In other words, GREP is self-configuring.) This option allows you to tailor the default option settings to your own taste.
- `-z` *Verbose:* GREP prints the file name of every file searched. Each matching line is preceded by its line number. A count of matching lines in each file is given, even if the count is zero.

## Order of Precedence

---

A few of GREP's options override certain others; the following order of precedence applies:

`-z` overrides `-l` `-c` `-n`  
`-l` overrides `-c` `-n`  
`-c` overrides `-n`

For example, suppose you type in the following GREP command line:

```
grep -c -z main( my*.c
```

GREP will search all files matching the MY\*.C file specification for the search string *main(* and print the file name of every file searched, number each matching line, *and* give a count of matching lines for each file searched.

Remember that each option is a switch: its state reflects the way you last “flipped” it. At any given time, each option can only be *on* or *off*. Each occurrence of a given option on the command line overrides its previous definition. For example, you might type in the following command line:

```
grep -r -i- -d -i -r- main( my*.c
```

Given this command line, GREP will run with the `-d` option *on*, the `-i` option *on*, and the `-r` option *off*.

You can install your preferred default setting for each option in GREP.COM with the `-w` option. For example, if you want GREP to always do a verbose search (`-z on`), you can install it with the following command:

```
grep -w -z
```

## The Search String

---

The value of *searchstring* defines the pattern GREP will search for. A search string can be either a *regular expression* or a *literal string*. In a regular expression, certain characters have special meanings: they are operators that govern the search. In a literal string, there are no operators: each character is treated literally.

You can enclose the search string in quotation marks to prevent spaces and tabs from being treated as delimiters. Matches will not cross line boundaries (a match must be contained in a single line).

An expression is either a single character or a set of characters enclosed in brackets. A concatenation of regular expressions is a regular expression.

## Operators in Regular Expressions

---

When you use the `-r` option, the search string is treated as a regular expression (not a literal expression) and the following characters take on special meanings:

- ^ A circumflex at the start of the expression matches the start of a line.
- \$ A dollar sign at the end of the expression matches the end of a line.
- .
- \* An expression followed by an asterisk wildcard matches zero or more occurrences of that expression. For example: in `fo*`, the `*` operates on the expression `o`; it matches `f`, `fo`, `foo`, etc. (`f` followed by zero or more `os`), but doesn't match `fa`.
- + An expression followed by a plus sign matches one or more occurrences of that expression: `fo+` matches `fo`, `foo`, etc., but not `f`.
- [ ] A string enclosed in brackets matches any character in that string, but no others. If the first character in the string is a circumflex (`^`), the expression matches any character *except* the characters in the string. For example, `[xyz]` matches `x`, `y`, or `z`, while `[^xyz]` matches `a` and `b`, but not `x`, `y`, or `z`. You can specify a range of characters with two characters separated by a dash (`-`). These can be combined to form expressions (like `[a-bd-z?]`) to match `?` and any lowercase letter except `c`.
- \ The *backslash escape character* tells GREP to search for the literal character that follows it. For example, `\.` matches a period instead of "any character".

**Note:** Four of the previously-described characters (`$`, `.`, `*` and `+`) do not have any special meaning when used within a bracketed set. In addition, the character `^` is only treated specially if it immediately follows the beginning of the set definition (that is, immediately after the `[`).

Any ordinary character not mentioned in the preceding list matches that character. (`>` matches `>`, `#` matches `#`, etc.)

## The File Specification

---

The third item in the GREP command line is *filespec*, the file specification; it tells GREP which files (or groups of files) to search. *filespec* can be an

explicit file name, or a “generic” file name incorporating the DOS ? and \* wildcards. In addition, you can enter a path (drive and directory information) as part of *filespec*. If you give *filespec* without a path, GREP only searches the current directory.

## Examples with Notes

---

The following examples assume that all of GREP’s options default to *off*:

### Example 1

**Command line:** `grep main( *.c`

**Matches:**  
`main()  
mymain(`

**Does not match:** `mymainfunc()  
MAIN(i: integer);`

**Files Searched:** \*.C in current directory.

**Note:** By default, the search is case-sensitive.

### Example 2

**Command line:** `grep -r [^a-z]main\ *( *.c`

**Matches:**  
`main(i:integer)  
main(i,j:integer)  
if (main ()) halt;`

**Does not match:** `mymain()  
MAIN(i:integer);`

**Files Searched:** \*.C in current directory.

**Note:** The search string here tells GREP to search for the word *main* with no preceding lowercase letters (`[^a-z]`), followed by zero or more occurrences of blank spaces (`\ *`), then a left parenthesis.

Since spaces and tabs are normally considered to be command-line delimiters, you must *quote* them if you want to include them as part of a regular expression. In this case, the space after *main* is quoted with the backslash escape character. You could also accomplish this by placing the space in double quotes (`[^a-z]main" "`).

### *Example 3*

**Command line:** `grep -ri [a-c]:\\data\\.fil *.c *.inc`

**Matches:** A:\data.fil  
c:\Data.Fil  
B:\DATA.FIL

**Does not match:** d:\data.fil  
a:data.fil

**Files Searched:** \*.C and \*.INC in current directory.

**Note:** Because the backslash and period characters (\ and .) usually have special meaning, if you want to search for them, you must quote them by placing the backslash escape character immediately in front of them.

### *Example 4*

**Command line:** `grep -ri [^a-z]word[^a-z] *.doc`

**Matches:** every new word must be on a new line.  
MY WORD!  
word--smallest unit of speech.  
In the beginning there was the WORD, and the WORD

**Does not match:** Each file has at least 2000 words.  
He misspells toward as toward.

**Files Searched:** \*.DOC in the current directory.

**Note:** This format basically defines how to search for a given word.

### *Example 5*

**Command line:** `grep "search string with spaces" *.doc *.asm  
a:\work\myfile.*`

**Matches:** This is a search string with spaces in it.

**Does not match:** THIS IS A SEARCH STRING WITH SPACES IN IT.  
This is a search string with many spaces in it.

**Files Searched:** \*.DOC and \*.ASM in the current directory, and MYFILE.\* in a directory called \WORK on drive A:.

**Note:** This is an example of how to search for a string with embedded spaces.

### Example 6

**Command line:** `grep -rd "[ ,.:?'\"]"$ \*.doc`

**Matches:** He said hi to me.  
Where are you going?  
Happening in anticipation of a unique situation,  
Examples include the following:  
"Many men smoke, but fu man chu."

**Does not match:** He said "Hi" to me  
Where are you going? I'm headed to the beach this

**Files Searched:** \*.DOC in the root directory and all its subdirectories  
on the current drive.

**Note:** This example searches for the characters , . : ? ' and " at the end of a line. Notice that the double quote within the range is preceded by an escape character so it is treated as a normal character instead of as the ending quote for the string. Also, notice how the \$ character appears outside of the quoted string. This demonstrates how regular expressions can be concatenated to form a longer expression.

### Example 7

**Command line:** `grep -ild " the " \*.doc`  
**or** `grep -i -l -d " the " \*.doc`  
**or** `grep -il -d " the " \*.doc`

**Matches:** Anyway, this is the time we have  
do you think? The main reason we are

**Does not match:** He said "Hi" to me just when I  
Where are you going? I'll bet you're headed to

**Files Searched:** \*.DOC in the root directory and all its subdirectories  
on the current drive.

**Note:** This example ignores case and just prints the names of any files that contain at least one match. The three examples show different ways of specifying multiple options.





## BGIOBJ: Conversion Utility for Graphics Drivers and Fonts

*In this appendix, we explain how to use BGIOBJ, a utility that allows you to use a non-dynamic scheme for loading graphics drivers and character fonts into your graphics programs.*

### What Is BGIOBJ?

BGIOBJ is a utility you can use to convert graphics driver files and character sets (stroked font files) to object files. Once they're converted, you can link them into your program, making them part of the executable file. This is offered in addition to the graphics package's dynamic loading scheme, in which your program loads graphics drivers and character sets (stroked fonts) from disk at execution time.

Linking drivers and fonts directly into your program is advantageous because the executable file contains all (or most) of the drivers and/or fonts it might need, and doesn't need to access the driver and font files on disk when running. However, linking the drivers and fonts into your executable increases its size.

To convert a driver or font file to a linkable object file, use the BGIOBJ.EXE utility. This is the simplified syntax:

```
BGIOBJ <source file>
```

where <source file> is the driver or font file to be converted to an object file. The object file created has the same file name as the source file, with the

extension .OBJ; for example, EGAVGA.BGI yields EGAVGA.OBJ, SANS.CHR gives SANS.OBJ, etc.

## *Adding the New .OBJ Files to GRAPHICS.LIB*

---

You should add the driver and font object modules to GRAPHICS.LIB, so the linker can locate them when it links in the graphics routines. If you don't add these new object modules to GRAPHICS.LIB, you'll have to add them to the list of files in the TC project (.PRJ) file, on the TCC command line, or on the TLINK command line. To add these object modules to GRAPHICS.LIB, invoke the Turbo Librarian (TLIB) with the following command line:

```
tlib graphics +<object file name> [ +<object file name> ... ]
```

where *<object file name>* is the name of the object file created by BGIOBJ.EXE (such as CGA, EGAVGA, GOTH, etc.); the .OBJ extension is implied, so you don't need to include it. You can add several files with one command line to save time; see the example following.

(For more information about TLIB, refer to Appendix B in this addendum.)

## *Registering the Drivers and Fonts*

---

After adding the driver and font object modules to GRAPHICS.LIB, you have to *register* all the drivers and fonts that you want linked in; you do this by calling **registerbgidriver** and **registerbgifont** in your program (before calling **initgraph**). This informs the graphics system of the presence of those files, and ensures that they will be linked in when the executable file is created by the linker.

The registering routines each take one parameter; a symbolic name defined in GRAPHICS.H. Each registering routine returns a non-negative value if the driver or font is successfully registered.

The following table is a complete list of drivers and fonts included with Turbo C. It shows the names to be used with **registerbgidriver** and **registerbgifont**.

<i>Driver file (* .BGI)</i>	<i>registerbgidriver Symbolic name</i>	<i>Font file (* .CHR)</i>	<i>registerbgifont Symbolic name</i>
CGA	CGA_driver	TRIP	triplex_font
EGAVGA	EGAVGA_driver	LITT	small_font
HERC	Herc_driver	SANS	sansserif_font
ATT	ATT_driver	GOTH	gothic_font
PC3270	PC3270_driver		

### *An Example*

Here's a complete example. Suppose you want to convert the files for the CGA graphics driver, the gothic font, and the triplex font to object modules, then link them into your program .

1. Convert the binary files to object files using BGIOBJ.EXE, as shown in the following separate command lines:

```
bgiobj cga
bgiobj trip
bgiobj goth
```

This creates 3 files: CGA.OBJ, TRIP.OBJ, and GOTH.OBJ.

2. You can add these object files to GRAPHICS.LIB with this TLIB command line:

```
tlib graphics +cga +trip +goth
```

If you don't add the object files to GRAPHICS.LIB, you need to add the object file names CGA.OBJ, TRIP.OBJ, and GOTH.OBJ to your project list (if you are using Turbo C's integrated environment), or to the TCC command line. For example, the TCC command line would look like this:

```
tcc niftgraf graphics.lib cga.obj trip.obj goth.obj
```

3. You register these files in your graphics program like this:

```
/* header file declares CGA_driver, triplex_font, and gothic_font */
#include <graphics.h>

/* register and check for errors (one never knows ....) */

if (registerbgidriver(CGA_driver) < 0) exit(1);
if (registerbgifont(triplex_font) < 0) exit(1);
if (registerbgifont(gothic_font) < 0) exit(1);
```

```

/* ... */
initgraph(...);          /* initgraph should be called after registering */
/* ... */

```

If you ever get a linker error `Segment exceeds 64k` after linking in some drivers and/or fonts, refer to the following section.

## The /F option

---

This section explains what steps to take if you get the linker error `Segment exceeds 64k` (or a similar error) after linking in several driver and/or font files (especially with tiny, small, and compact model programs).

By default, the files created by BGIOBJ.EXE all use the same segment (called `_TEXT`). This can cause problems if your program links in many drivers and/or fonts, or when you're using the tiny, small, or compact memory model.

There is NO cure if this happens in tiny model programs. You will have to unlink some or all of the drivers and fonts, and use the dynamic driver/font loading scheme.

With other model programs, you can convert one or more of the drivers or fonts with the BGIOBJ /F option. This option directs BGIOBJ to use a segment name of the form `<filename>_TEXT`, so that the default segment is not overburdened by all the linked-in drivers and fonts (and, in small and compact model programs, all the program code). For example, the following two BGIOBJ command lines direct BGIOBJ to use segment names of the form `EGAVGA_TEXT` and `SANS_TEXT`.

```

bgiobj /F egavga
bgiobj /F sans

```

When you select the /F option, BGIOBJ also appends F to the target object file (`EGAVGAF.OBJ`, `SANSF.OBJ`, etc.), and appends `_far` to the name that will be used with `registerfarbgidriver` and `registerfarbgifont`. (For example, `EGAVGA_driver` becomes `EGAVGA_driver_far`.) For files created with /F, you must use these far registering routines instead of the regular `registerbgidriver` and `registerbgifont`. For example:

```

if (registerfarbgidriver(EGAVGA_driver_far) < 0) exit(1);
if (registerfarbgifont(sansserif_font_far) < 0) exit(1);

```

## Advanced BGI OBJ Features

---

This section explains some of BGI OBJ's advanced features, and the routines `registerfarbgidriver` and `registerfarbgifont`. Only experienced users should use these features.

This is the full syntax of the BGI OBJ.EXE utility:

```
BGI OBJ  [/F] <source> <destination> <public name> <seg-name> <seg-class>
```

---

<i>Component</i>	<i>Description</i>
<b>/F or -F</b>	This option instructs BGI OBJ.EXE to use a segment name other than <code>_TEXT</code> (the default), and to change the public name and destination file name. (See the previous section for a detailed discussion of /F.)
<b>&lt;source&gt;</b>	This is the driver or font file to be converted. If the file is not one of the driver/font files shipped with Turbo C, you should specify a full file name (including extension).
<b>&lt;destination&gt;</b>	This is the name of the object file to be produced. The default destination file name is <code>&lt;source&gt;.OBJ</code> , or <code>&lt;source&gt;F.OBJ</code> if you use the /F option.
<b>&lt;public name&gt;</b>	This is the name that will be used in the program in a call to <code>registerbgidriver</code> or <code>registerbgifont</code> (or their respective far versions) to link in the object module.  The public name is the external name used by the linker, so it should be the name used in the program, prefixed with an underbar. If your program uses Pascal calling conventions, use only uppercase letters, and do not add an underbar.
<b>&lt;seg-name&gt;</b>	This is an optional segment name; the default is <code>_TEXT</code> (or <code>&lt;filename&gt;_TEXT</code> if /F is specified)
<b>&lt;seg-class&gt;</b>	This is an optional segment class; the default is <code>CODE</code> .

---

All parameters except `<source>` are optional. If you need to specify an optional parameter, all the parameters preceding it must also be specified.

If you choose to use your own public name(s), you have to add declaration(s) to your program, using one of the following forms:

```
void public_name(void);          /* if /F not used, default segment name used */  
extern int far public_name[];    /* if /F used, or segment name not _TEXT */
```

In these declarations, `public_name` matches the *<public name>* you used when converting with BGIOBJ. The GRAPHICS.H header file contains declarations of the default driver and font public names; if you use those default public names you don't have to declare them as just described.

After these declarations, you have to register all the drivers and fonts in your program. If you don't use the /F option and don't change the default segment name, you should register through **registerbgidriver** and **registerbgifont**; otherwise use **registerfarbgidriver** and **registerfarbgifont**.

# Index



## A

- access(), 139
- Active graphics page, 121
- Active screen page, 20
- Actual color, in palette, 26, 86
- Adapters, supported, 17
- Add, object modules (TLIB), 172
- Additions to the integrated environment, 31
- Allocating memory, *See* Memory allocation
- AND\_PUT, 81
- arc(), 19, 55
- Arc coordinates, 55
- arccoordstype structure, 56
- \_argc, 52
- argc, passed to main(), 52
- \_argv, 52
- argv, passed to main(), 52
- asctime(), 139
- Aspect ratio, arcs, circles, ellipses, pie slices, 20, 55
- assert(), 58
- atof(), 139
- atoi(), 139
- atol(), 139
- ATT400, 104
- Attribute
  - cell, text mode, 131
  - control, 9
- Auto-detection, graphics adapter, 103
- Autoindent
  - mode, menu item, (TCINST) 165
  - optimal fill and, 36
- Auxiliary I/O stream, 148

## B

- Background color
  - graphics mode, 24, 74
  - text mode, 13, 131, 132
- Backup source files
  - menu item (TC), 33
  - menu item (TCINST), 164

- bar(), 19, 59
- bar3d(), 19, 59
- Bars, drawing, filling, stacking, 59
- .BGI (device driver) files, 15
- BGIOBJ utility, 23, 93, 185-190
- Binary
  - scratch file, 130
  - search, 61
  - streams, 147
- BIOS, console output via, 14
- bioskey(), 155
- Bit images, saving and displaying, 20, 80
- Bit-mapped fonts, 22, 92
- BKSLASH\_FILL, 78
- BLACK, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- Black and white, menu item (TCINST), 166
- Blank lines, inserting in text window, 107
- BLINK, 14
- Blink-enable bit, cell attributes, 131
- BLUE, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- BOTTOM\_TEXT, 92
- Bounded region, flood-filling, 72
- Brace matching, 38
- brk(), 139
- BROWN, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- bsearch(), 61
- Buffering streams, 147
- BUILTINS.MAK, 146
- BW40, 135
- BW80, 135
- Bytes
  - read from files (maximum), 116
  - written to files (maximum), 138

## C

- C40, 135
- C80, 135
- Calculating size of text strings, 134
- calloc(), 62, 110
- Capturing
  - image from screen, 80
  - text, 89

- Case-sensitivity option, TLIB, 174
- Cell attributes, text mode, 131
- CENTER\_LINE, 83
- CENTER\_TEXT, 92
- CGA
  - display, 25-line, integrated environment, 34
  - graphics\_drivers constant, 104
  - high resolution, colors and, 27
  - low resolution, colors and, 25
- Changes to command-line Turbo C 45
- Changing
  - colors in palettes, 86
  - file size, 62
  - screen size, 34
- Character fonts
  - adding to GRAPHICS.LIB, 186
  - conversion utility, 185
  - discussion of, 22
  - settextstyle() and, 92
  - user-defined size factor, 125
- Character, output to screen, 114
- chdir(), 139
- \_chmod(), 139
- chmod(), 139
- .CHR (stroked font) files, 15
- chsize(), 62
- circle(), 19, 55
- Clear
  - graphics screen, 63
  - graphics viewport, 20
  - screen, 8, 20
  - text mode window, 65
  - to end of line, 8, 64
- cleardevice(), 20, 63
- clearviewport(), 20, 63
- Clipping, viewport, 23, 95
- Closed figures, drawing/filling, 69
- CLOSEDOT\_FILL, 78
- closegraph(), 16, 103, 123
- clreol(), 8, 64
- clrscr(), 8, 65
- Color
  - background
    - graphics mode, 24, 74
    - text mode, 13, 131, 132
  - changing palettes, 86
- constants, 13
- control
  - ATT400, graphics mode, 25
  - CGA, graphics mode, 25
  - EGA, graphics mode, 25
  - graphics mode, 24
  - MCGA, graphics mode, 25
  - text mode, 9
  - VGA, graphics mode, 27
- customization, menu item (TCINST), 167
- dark, 133
- drawing, graphics mode, 24
- foreground, text mode, 13, 131, 132
- light, 133
- menu item (TCINST), 166
- table
  - CGA and EGA, 87
  - graphics mode, 24, 74
  - text mode, 14, 133
- text mode, 9, 13
- values, graphics mode, 24
- COM1:, 148
- Combination operator, putting images on screen, 81
- Command line, TLIB, 170
- Command-line Turbo C
  - changes to, 45
  - configuration file, 149
  - graphics library and, 15
- Comment delimiter matching, 38, 40
- Comparison routine, used in searches, 61
- CON, 148
- Config auto save
  - menu item (TC), 33, 152
  - menu item (TCINST), 164
- Configuration file
  - automatic saving of, 33
  - changing from within TC, 151
  - converting, 145
  - discussion of, 149
  - integrated environment, 33
  - searching for, 151
  - TC, contents of, 150
  - TC, creating, 151
  - TCINST and, 151

- using -L and -I in, 48
- Console
  - I/O functions, 7
  - output, to video RAM, 14
- Control
  - attribute, 9
  - color
    - text mode, 9
    - graphics mode, 24
  - graphics system, 16
  - mode, 9
  - PC speaker, 127
  - window, 9
- Converting
  - .BGI files to .OBJ, 185
  - .CHR files to .OBJ, 185
  - configuration files, 145
  - intensity, 9
  - string to unsigned long, 129
- c option (GREP), 178
- Coordinates
  - arc and ellipse, 20, 55
  - current position, 96
  - maximum screen, 84
  - window and viewport, 7
- Coprocessor chip flag, 54
- Copying text
  - from memory to screen, 8, 89
  - from screen to memory, 8, 89
  - to another screen location, 111
- COPY\_PUT, 81
- Corrections to original manuals, 154
- Count only option (GREP), 178
- country(), 65
- Country-dependent information, 65
- country structure, 65
- cprintf(), 7, 66
- cputs(), 7, 11, 66
- Creating
  - and running other programs, 127
  - file names, 129
- \_creat(), 139, 155
- creatnew(), 139
- cscanf(), 140
- ctime(), 140
- Current
  - file pointer, position of, 71
  - pick file, menu item, 32, 153

- position
  - coordinating 96
  - moving, 20, 112
  - text output and, 113
- Cursor position, in window, 8, 10, 97, 136
- Customize colors, menu item (TCINST), 167
- Customizing
  - editor commands, 160-164
  - TC, with TCINST, 157
- CYAN, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133

## D

- DARKGRAY, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- DASHED\_LINE, 83
- Data segment size, 53
- D command-line option, 45
- Default
  - color set, menu item (TCINST), 167
  - display mode, menu item (TCINST), 166
  - settings, graphics mode, 98
  - TC.EXE, installing with TCINST, 157-168
- DEFAULT\_FONT, 93
- Define symbolic constants
  - command-line option, 45
- Defining
  - viewport, graphics mode 95
  - window, text mode, 137
- delay(), 66
- Delete line, text mode window, 8, 67
- Delimiter matching, 38
- delline(), 8, 67
- DETECT, 104
- detectgraph(), 16, 103
- Detecting graphics adapter, 103
- Device drivers, graphics, 15, 103, 118, 185
- Diagnostic routine, assert(), 58
- Dimensions, text strings, 134
- Directional pair matching, 38
- Directories option (GREP), 178
- Directory search

- exec... routines, 70
- spawn... routines, 127
- directvideo variable, 14, 52
- Display mode, menu item (TCINST), 166
- Displaying bit images, 20
- div(), 68
- Division, integer and long integer 68
- d option (GREP), 178
- DOSERROR structure, 155
- dosexterr(), 155
- DOTTED\_LINE, 83
- Drawing
  - arcs, 55
  - bars, 19, 59
  - circles, 19, 55
  - circular arcs, 19
  - color, 24, 75
  - ellipses, 19, 55
  - lines, 19, 108
  - pie slices, 19, 55
  - polygons, 19, 69
  - rectangles, 19, 117
  - routines, 19
  - three-dimensional bars 19
- drawpoly(), 19, 69
- Drivers, linked-in, 118
- dup(), 156
- Dynamic loading, graphics drivers, 17, 104

## E

- Echoed keyboard input, 75
- Edit
  - auto save
    - menu item (TC), 33
    - menu item (TCINST), 164
  - window, resizing with TCINST, 168
- Editor
  - commands
    - changing, 42
    - menu item (TCINST), 160
  - file, automatic saving, 33
  - hot keys, rebinding, 160-164
  - new features, 35

- tab size, modifying, 34, 36
- EGA, 104
- EGA display, 43-line, integrated environment, 34
- EGA64, 104
- EGAMONO, 104
- EGA\_BLACK, 27, 87
- EGA\_BLUE, 87
- EGA\_BROWN, 87
- EGA\_CYAN, 87
- EGA\_DARKGRAY, 87
- EGA\_GREEN, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTBLUE, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTCYAN, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTGRAY, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTGREEN, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTMAGENTA, 87
- EGA\_LIGHTRED, 87
- EGA\_MAGENTA, 87
- EGA\_RED, 87
- EGA\_WHITE, 27, 87
- EGA\_YELLOW, 87
- \_8087 variable, 54
- ellipse(), 19, 55
- EMPTY\_FILL, 78
- Enumeration
  - fill\_patterns, 77
  - graphics\_drivers, 104
  - graphics\_modes, 79, 105
  - line\_styles, 82
  - putimage\_ops, 81
  - text\_modes, 12, 135
- eof(), 140, 156
- Errata, 154
- Error
  - codes, graphics mode, 28, 101
  - handling, graphics mode, 28, 100
  - message string, graphics mode, 28, 101, 128
  - number, 128
- exec...(), 70
- Explicit library files, 47
- Expression search option (GREP), 178
- Extended syntax, command-line options, 46
- Extract

object modules (TLIB), 173

## F

farcoreleft(), 140

fgetpos(), 71

FILE object, 146

File

- binary, 130

- changing size, 62

- creating names, 129

- handles, 146

- pointer, position of, 71

- reading from, 116

- response, using with TLIB, 173

- scratch, 130

- search

  - exec... routines, 70

  - spawn... routines, 127

  - library, 47

  - utility, 177

- specification (GREP), 179

- temporary, 130

- temporary names, 129

- writing to, 138

Fill

- color, 78

- pattern

  - getting info about 19

  - predefined, 77

  - user-defined, 20, 76

Filling

- bars, 19, 59

- bounded regions, 19

- pie slices, 56

- polygons, 19, 69

- routines, 19

- three-dimensional bars, 19

fill\_patterns enumeration type, 77

fillpoly(), 19, 69

findfirst(), 140

Flag, math coprocessor chip, 54

Flip to saved screen, 34

Flood-filling, 72

floodfill(), 19, 72, 123

\_fmode variable, 155

fnmerge(), 140

fnsplit(), 140

Fonts

- bit-mapped, 22

- linked-in, 118

- modifying size, 125

- settextstyle() and, 92

- size modification, 125

- stroked, 22

- user-defined size factor, 125

fopen(), 140

/F option (BGIOBJ), 188

Foreground color, text mode, 13, 131, 132

Formatted output, to screen, 66

\_fpreset(), 140

fprintf(), 140

fputchar(), 140

fputs(), 140

fread(), 140

free(), 99

freopen(), 140, 148

fscanf(), 140

fseek(), 148

fsetpos(), 71

fstat(), 140

Functions

- new and modified, 51-138

- prototypes, revised, 139

fwrite(), 140

## G

Ganging

- directories (TC), 32

- options, command-line, 46

getarccoords(), 19, 29, 55

getaspectratio(), 19, 29, 55

getbkcolor(), 24, 29, 73

getche(), 8, 75

getcolor(), 24, 29, 75

getcwd(), 140

getdfree(), 140

getenv(), 140

getfat(), 140

getfillpattern(), 19, 29, 76

getfillsettings(), 19, 29, 77

getftime(), 156

- getgraphmode(), 16, 29, 79
- getimage(), 20, 80
- getlinesettings(), 19, 82
- getmaxcolor(), 24, 29, 84
- getmaxx(), 29, 84
- getmaxy(), 29, 84
- getmoderange(), 16, 29, 85
- getpalette(), 24, 29, 86
- getpass(), 141
- getpixel(), 20, 29, 88
- gettext(), 8, 89
- gettextinfo(), 10, 90
- gettextsettings(), 22, 29, 91
- Getting color information, 24
- getviewsettings(), 20, 29, 95
- getx(), 29, 96
- gety(), 29, 96
- Global variables, new and modified, 51-54
- gmtime(), 141
- GOTHIC\_FONT, 93
- gotoxy(), 8, 11, 97
- graphdefaults(), 16, 97
- grapherrormsg(), 28, 100
- \_graphfreemem(), 16, 99
- \_graphgetmem(), 16, 99, 123
- GRAPHICS.H, 15
- GRAPHICS.LIB
  - adding to, 186
  - linking, 15
- Graphics
  - adapters
    - auto-detection of, 103
    - supported, 17
  - buffer, setting, 123
  - device drivers, 15, 103, 118, 185
  - drivers
    - adding to GRAPHICS.LIB, 186
    - conversion utility, 185
    - dynamic loading of, 104
    - range of modes, 85
    - registering, 17
  - include file, 15
  - library, 15
    - functions, overview of, 16
  - mode
    - default settings, 98
    - discussion of, 6

- error handling, 100
- inquiry, 79
- maximum color, 84
- programming in, 15
- range, 85
- returning to text mode, 135
- setting, 79
- state query, 28
- switching to text mode, 119
- text output in, 113
- pages, 121
- screen, clearing, 63
- system
  - control, 16
  - initializing, 103
  - memory
    - allocation, 18, 99
    - deallocation, 103
  - overriding recommended mode, 103
  - resizing internal buffer, 123
  - shutting down, 103
  - using with TC.EXE, 15
- graphics\_drivers enumeration type, 104
- graphics\_errors symbolic constant, 28, 101
- graphics\_mode enumeration type, 79, 105
- graphresult(), 28, 100
- GREEN, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- GREP, 177-184

## H

- Hardware tabs, 36
- HATCH\_FILL, 78
- Heap, 53
- \_heaplen, 53
- HERCMONO, 104
- Hercules graphics adapter, 17, 104
- High
  - graphics mode value, 85
  - intensity bit, text mode characters, 102
  - performance output, 14
  - resolution, CGA, colors, 27

highvideo(), 9, 102  
HORIZ\_DIR, 93  
Hot key  
    pick list, 152  
    reassigning in editor, 42  
    saved output screen, 34

## I

-I command-line option, 45  
Ignore case  
    option (GREP), 178  
    mode (TCINST), 162  
Image  
    bit, 20  
    capturing, 21  
    manipulation, 20  
imagesize(), 20, 80  
Implicit library files, 47  
Include  
    directories  
        command-line option, 45  
        menu item (TCINST), 160  
    file, graphics, 15  
initgraph(), 16, 79, 103, 123  
Initializing the graphics system, 103  
inportb(), 141  
Input, echoed from keyboard, 75  
Insert  
    blank lines, in text window, 8, 107  
    mode, menu item (TCINST), 165  
insline(), 8, 107  
Install Editor screen (TCINST), 160  
Installation program (optional), 157  
Integer division, 68  
Integrated environment  
    additions to, 31  
    configuration file, 149  
Intensity  
    converting, 9  
    text mode characters, 102  
Internal  
    color tables (TC), 168  
    graphics buffer, resizing, 123  
INTERLEAVE\_FILL, 78  
I/O  
    console, 7

    stream, auxiliary, 148  
ioctl(), 141  
-i option (GREP), 178

## J

Justification, text output and, 113

## K

keep(), 141

## L

LAST, 135  
-L command-line option, 45  
ldiv(), 68  
LEFT\_TEXT, 92  
Length  
    heap, 53  
    stack, 53  
lfind(), 61  
Librarian, object module, 169  
Libraries, creating with TLIB, 173  
Library  
    directories  
        command-line option, 45  
        menu item (TC), 31  
        menu item (TCINST), 160  
    files  
        explicit, 47  
        implicit, 47  
        search algorithm, 47  
        user-specified, 47  
LIGHTBLUE, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
Light colors, 133  
LIGHTCYAN, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
LIGHTGRAY, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
LIGHTGREEN, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
LIGHTMAGENTA, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
LIGHTRED, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133  
line(), 19, 108  
Linear search, 61  
LINE\_FILL, 78  
linerel(), 19, 108

- Lines
  - drawing, 108
  - pattern, 82
  - style, 82
  - thickness, 82
- line\_styles enumeration type, 82
- lineto(), 19, 108
- Linkable object file, character fonts
  - and graphics drivers, 185
- Linked-in drivers and fonts, 118
- Linker error, Segment exceeds 64k, 188
- Linking drivers and fonts into your programs, 185-190
- List match files option (GREP), 178
- Literal string (GREP), 179
- Loading and running other programs, 70
- localtime(), 141
- Long integer division, 68
- l option (GREP), 178
- Low
  - graphics mode value, 85
  - intensity bit, text mode characters, 102
  - resolution, CGA, colors, 25
- lowvideo(), 9, 102
- \_lrotl(), 119
- \_lrotr(), 119
- lsearch(), 61
- LTBKSLASH\_FILL, 78
- LTSLASH\_FILL, 78

## M

- MAGENTA, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- Magenta color set, menu item (TCINST), 167
- main(), argc and argv passed to, 52
- Main memory allocation, 110
- MAKE, 146
- malloc(), 99, 110
- Manipulating
  - images, 20
  - pixels, 20
  - screens, 20
  - text, 8

- viewports, 20
- Mapping, colors, in text mode, 10
- Match pair command, editor, 38
- Matching delimiters, editor
  - command, 38
- Math coprocessor chip flag, 54
- Maximum
  - color value, 84
  - screen coordinates, 84
- MCGA, 17, 104
- MDA display, 25-line, integrated
  - environment, 34
- memcpy(), 141
- memchr(), 141
- memcmp(), 141
- memcpy(), 141
- memicmp(), 141
- memmove(), 141
- Memory allocation
  - bit images, 20
  - calloc(), 62
  - graphics system, 18, 99
  - main, 110
  - user-defined routines, 99
- Memory deallocation, graphics
  - system, 103
- memset(), 141
- Menu items
  - Autoindent mode (TCINST), 165
  - Backup source files
    - TC, 33
    - TCINST, 164
  - Black and white (TCINST), 166
  - Color (TCINST), 166
  - Color customization (TCINST), 167
  - Config auto save
    - TC, 33
    - TCINST, 164
  - Current pick file, 32, 153
  - Customize colors (TCINST), 167
  - Default color set (TCINST), 167
  - Default display mode (TCINST), 166
  - Display mode (TCINST), 166
  - Edit auto save
    - TC, 33



- TCINST, 164
- Editor commands (TCINST), 160
- Include directories (TCINST), 160
- Insert mode (TCINST), 165
- Library directories
  - TC, 31
  - TCINST, 160
- Magenta color set (TCINST), 167
- Monochrome (TCINST), 166
- Output directory (TCINST), 160
- Pick file name
  - TC, 32, 153
  - TCINST, 160
- Resize windows (TCINST), 168
- Screen size
  - TC, 34
  - TCINST, 165
- Setup environment (TCINST), 164
- Tab size, 34, 36
- Turbo C directories (TCINST), 159, 160
- Turquoise color set (TCINST), 167
- Use tabs (TCINST), 165
- Zoom state (TCINST), 164
- Zoomed windows, 33
- Menus
  - Options/Directories, 31
  - Options/Environment, 32
- Message window, resizing with TCINST, 168
- mkdir(), 141
- mktemp(), 141
- Mode
  - control, 9
  - graphics, 6
  - text, 5
  - video, 5
- Modifying
  - character font size, 125
  - editor tab size, 34, 36
  - font size, 93
- MONO, 135
- Monochrome, menu item (TCINST), 166
- movedata(), 141
- moverel(), 19, 112
- movetext(), 8, 111
- moveto(), 19, 112

- Moving
  - current position (CP), 20, 112
  - cursor, 8, 97
  - text, 8
- Multi Color Graphics Array (MCGA), 17, 104
- Multiple library directories
  - on command line, 45
  - on menus, 32

## N

- Near heap, 53
- Nested delimiters, pair matching and, 38
- Non-match option (GREP), 178
- n option (GREP), 178
- normvideo(), 9, 102
- NORM\_WIDTH, 83
- nosound(), 126
- NOT\_PUT, 81
- Numbers option (GREP), 178

## O

- Object files
  - .BGI conversion, 185
  - .CHR conversion, 185
  - in libraries, 169
- module
  - librarian, 169-176
  - manipulating with TLIB, 173
- \_open(), 141
- open(), 141
- Operating mode, screen, 5
- Operations, TLIB, 171
- Operators, in regular expressions (GREP), 179
- Optimal fill
  - autoindent and, 36
  - turning it off, 37
- Options
  - Directories menu, 31
  - ganging on command line, 46

- Order of precedence, GREP options, 179
- OR\_PUT, 81
- outportb(), 141
- Output
  - active vs. visual graphics page, 121
  - character to screen, 114
  - direct to video RAM, 52
  - directory, menu item (TCINST), 160
  - high-performance, text mode, 14
  - screen, 34
  - stream, printer 148
  - string to screen, 66
  - text, in graphics mode, 22
- outtext(), 22, 93, 113
- outtextxy(), 22, 93, 113
- Overriding recommended graphics mode, 103

## P

- Page
  - graphics, 121
  - screen buffer, 20
- Pair matching, editor 38
- Palette
  - changing colors in, 86
  - graphics mode, 24
  - predefined, CGA, 26, 105
  - See also* Color
- palettetype structure, 86
- Parenthesis matching, 38
- parsfnm(), 141
- Pattern, fill, 76
- PC3270, 104
- peek(), 142
- peekb(), 142
- perror(), 142
- Pick file, 32, 153
- Pick file name, menu item
  - TC, 32, 153
  - TCINST, 160
- Pick list, 152
- pieslice(), 19, 55
- Pie slices, 55

- Pixel
  - color inquiry, 20, 88
  - drawing in specified color, 88
  - height of string, 134
  - manipulation, 20
  - plotting, 20
  - value, color and, graphics mode, 24
  - width of string, 134
- poke(), 142
- pokeb(), 142
- Position
  - current file pointer, 71
  - cursor, 10, 97, 136
- Predefined
  - CGA palettes, 105
  - color palettes, 26, 87
  - streams, 148
- Printer output stream, 148
- printf(), 142
- PRN, 36, 148
- Program Segment Prefix, *See* PSP
- Programming
  - in graphics modes, 15
  - in text modes, 7
- Project file, graphics library and, 15
- Prototypes, revised, 139
- PSP, 53
- putch(), 8, 114
- putenv(), 142
- putimage(), 20, 80
- putimage\_ops enumeration type, 81
- putpixel(), 20, 88
- puts(), 142
- puttext(), 8, 89
- Putting saved images on screen, 20

## Q

- Quitting TCINST, 168
- qsort(), 142

## R

- random(), 115
- randomize(), 115

- Random number generator, 115
- Ratio, aspect, 20, 55
- `_read()`, 116
- `read()`, 116
- Reading
  - from files, 116
  - text, 8
- `realloc()`, 110
- Rebinding editor key strokes, 42, 160-164
- `rectangle()`, 19, 117
- RED, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133
- Redirecting streams, 148
- `registerbgidriver()`, 16, 118, 186
- `registerbgifont()`, 22, 118, 186
- `registerfarbgidriver()`, 188
- `registerfarbgifont()`, 188
- Registering
  - character fonts, 23, 118, 186
  - files, the far option, 188
  - fonts, 93
  - graphics drivers, 17, 118, 186
- Regular expression search option (GREP), 178
- `remove()`, 130
- Remove, object modules (TLIB), 173
- `rename()`, 142, 156
- Replace, object modules (TLIB), 173
- RESERVED, 104
- Resize
  - character fonts, 125
  - internal graphics buffer, 123
  - Turbo C's windows, 168
  - windows, menu item (TCINST), 168
- Response files, using with TLIB, 173
- `restorecrtmode()`, 16, 119
- Restoring screen mode, 119
- Returning to text mode from
  - graphics mode, 135
- Revised function prototypes, 139
- `rewind()`, 142
- RIGHT\_TEXT, 92
- `rmdir()`, 142
- ROM BIOS calls, via directvideo, 52
- r option (GREP), 178
- Rotating values to left or right, 119
- `_rotr()`, 119

## S

- SANSSERIF\_FONT, 93
- Saved output screen hot key, 34
- Saving
  - bit image to memory, 20, 80
  - configuration file, 33
  - editor file, 33
  - pick files, 154
  - text to memory, 89
- `sbrk()`, 142
- `scanf()`, 142, 156
- Scratch file, binary, 130
- Screen
  - coordinates
    - maximum, 84
    - text mode window, 137
  - manipulation, 20
  - page buffer, 20
  - size, menu item
    - TC, 34
    - TCINST, 165
- Search
  - algorithm
    - library files, 47
    - makefile, 146
  - binary, 61
  - configuration files, 151
  - directories
    - exec..., 70
    - spawn..., 127
  - files
    - exec..., 70
    - spawn..., 127
  - for text in files, 177
  - linear, 61
  - MAKE, for BUILTINS.MAK, 146
  - string (GREP), 179
  - utility, file, 177
- `searchpath()`, 142
- Seed point, 72
- `setactivepage()`, 20, 121
- `setallpalette()`, 74, 86
- `setbkcolor()`, 73
- `setblock()`, 142

- setbuf(), 147
- setcolor(), 75
- setfillpattern(), 19, 76
- setfillstyle(), 19, 77
- setgraphbufsize(), 16, 123
- setgraphmode(), 16, 79
- setlinestyle(), 19, 82
- setmode(), 142, 148
- setpalette(), 74, 86
- settextjustify(), 91, 22
- settextstyle(), 22, 91
- Setting
  - colors, in text mode, 9
  - graphics mode, 79
- Setup environment, menu item
  - (TCINST), 164
- setusercharsize(), 22, 125
- setvbuf(), 142, 147
- setviewport(), 7, 20, 95
- setvisualpage(), 20, 121
- size\_t, 61
- SLASH\_FILL, 78
- sleep(), 142
- SMALL\_FONT, 93
- Snow check, TCINST, 166
- Software tabs, 36
- SOLID\_FILL, 78
- SOLID\_LINE, 83
- sound(), 126
- Source files, automatic backup, 33
- spawn...(), 127
- Speaker control, 127
- Specification, file (GREP), 179
- sprintf(), 142
- sscanf(), 142
- Stack length, 53
- Standard
  - error, 128
  - streams, 148
- State query
  - graphics mode, 28
  - text mode, 10
- \_status87(), 142
- stdaux, 148
- stderr, 148
- stdin, 148
- STDIO.H, 146
- stdout, 148
- stdprn, 148
- stime(), 142
- \_stklen, 53
- stpcpy(), 143
- strcat(), 143
- strchr(), 143
- strcmp(), 143
- strcpy(), 143
- strcspn(), 143
- strdup(), 143
- Streams
  - auxiliary I/O, 148
  - binary mode, 147
  - buffering, 147
  - discussion of, 146
  - predefined, 148
  - printer output, 148
  - redirection, 148
  - standard, 148
  - text mode, 147
- \_strerror(), 128
- strerror(), 128
- stricmp(), 143
- String, converting to unsigned long, 129
- strlen(), 143
- strncat(), 143
- strncmp(), 143
- strncpy(), 143
- strnicmp(), 143
- strnset(), 143
- Stroked fonts, 22, 125
- strpbrk(), 143
- strrchr(), 143
- strset(), 143
- strspn(), 143
- strstr(), 143
- strtod(), 143
- strtok(), 143
- strtol(), 143
- strtoul(), 129
- Structures
  - arccoordstype, 56
  - country, 65
  - DOSERROR, 155
  - linesettingstype, 82
  - palettetype, 86
  - text\_info, 10

- textsettingstype, 91
- viewporttype, 95
- Supported graphics adapters, 17
- Suspend execution, 66
- Symbolic constants
  - colors, graphics modes, 74, 87
  - defining on command line, 45
  - fill patterns, 77
  - graphics\_errors, 28, 101
  - graphics\_drivers, 104
  - text\_modes, 135
- Syntax, extended, command-line
  - options, 46
- system(), 143

## T

- Tab size, menu item, 34, 36
- Tabs, changing, 34, 36
- TC configuration files, 150
- TC.EXE, additions to, 31
- TCC.EXE, changes to, 45
- TCCONFIG.EXE, 145
- TCCONFIG.TC, 149
- TCINST, 42, 157
  - configuration files and, 151
- Temporary file
  - creating 130
  - names, 129
- Text
  - colors, 13
  - copying to another location, 111
  - direction, 22, 92
  - font, 92
  - justification, 22, 92
  - manipulation, 8
  - mode
    - cell attributes, 131
    - defining window, 137
    - discussion of, 5
    - programming in, 7
    - returning to, from graphics, 135
    - selecting, 135
    - switching to graphics, 119
  - output
    - graphics mode, 22, 113
    - text mode, 8
    - to viewport, 113
    - reading, 8
    - size, 92
    - streams, 147
    - string, width and height, 134
    - video information, 90
    - window, 11
      - inserting blank lines in, 107
    - writing, 8
- textattr(), 9, 130
- text attributes, 130
- textbackground(), 9, 132
- textcolor(), 9, 132
- textheight(), 22, 94, 113, 134
- text\_info structure, 10, 90
- textmode(), 7, 9, 12, 135
- text\_modes enumeration type, 12, 135
- \_TEXT segment, BGIOBJ and, 188
- textsettingstype structure, 91
- textwidth(), 22, 94, 113, 134
- THICK\_WIDTH, 83
- Three-dimensional bars, drawing
  - and filling, 59
- time(), 115, 144
- TIME.H, 115
- TLIB
  - adding to GRAPHICS.LIB, 186
  - case-sensitivity option, 174
  - object module librarian, 169-176
  - operations, 171
- TLINK, TLIB and, 174
- tmpfile(), 130
- TMP\_MAX, 129
- tmpnam(), 129
- TOP\_TEXT, 92
- Translation mode, streams and, 147
- TRIPLEX\_FONT, 93
- TURBOC.CFG, 146, 149
- TURBOC.TC, 146
- Turbo C directories, menu item (TCINST), 159
- Turbo C directory, menu item (TCINST), 160
- Turbo Librarian, 169-176
- Turquoise color set, menu item (TCINST), 167

typedef  
  div\_t, 68  
  ldiv\_t, 68  
  size\_t, 61

## U

ungetc(), 144  
unlink(), 144  
USERBIT\_LINE, 83  
USER\_FILL, 78  
Use tabs, menu item (TCINST), 165  
User-defined  
  fill pattern, 76  
  line pattern, 83  
  size factor, character fonts, 125  
User-specified library files, 47  
Using graphics, 15  
Utilities  
  BGIOBJ, 185-190  
  GREP, 177-184  
  TCINST, 157-168  
  TLIB, 169-176

## V

Variables  
  \_argc, 52  
  \_argv, 52  
  direct output to video RAM, 52  
  \_8087, 54  
  \_fmode, 155  
  global, new and modified, 51-54  
  heap length, 53  
  stack length, 53  
Vectors, defining character fonts, 22  
Verbatim mode (TCINST), 162  
Verbose option (GREP), 178  
VERT\_DIR, 93  
VGA, 17, 104  
VGA display, 50-line, integrated  
  environment, 34

## Video

  adapter, 5  
  functions, 5  
  graphics array, 17, 104  
  information, text mode, 90  
  modes, 5  
  RAM, output to, 14, 52

## Viewport

  clearing, 20, 63  
  clipping in, 23, 93  
  defining, 95  
  manipulation, 20  
  settings, 95  
  text output to, 113

Visual graphics page, 121

Visual screen page, 20

-v option (GREP), 178

vfprintf(), 144

vfscanf(), 144

viewporttype structure, 95

vprintf(), 144

vscanf(), 144

vsprintf(), 144

vsscanf(), 144

## W

wherex(), 10, 136

wherey(), 10, 136

WHITE, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133

WIDEDOT\_FILL, 78

window(), 6, 9, 11, 137

## Windows

  control, 9

  definition of, 6

  integrated environment, resizing,  
  168

  text-mode, 11

-w option (GREP), 178

WordStar-like mode (TCINST), 162

Write option (GREP), 178

## Writing

text, 8  
to files, 138  
\_write(), 138  
write(), 138

## X

XHATCH\_FILL, 78  
XOR\_PUT, 81

## Y

YELLOW, 14, 26, 74, 87, 133

## Z

Zoom state, menu item (TCINST),  
164  
Zoomed windows, menu item, 33  
-z option (GREP), 178





